

GUIDE

CONNECT

الفصـــل الدراســـى الأول

الصف الرابع الابتدائى

By a group of supervisors

طبعة جديدة

طبقا لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤

GPS

تطبيق التعلّم التفاعلى

DESERT

DESERT ANIM

FREE GIFT NOT FOR SALE

دليل ولى الأمر

PARENTS' GUIDE

بتصريح وتحت إشراف

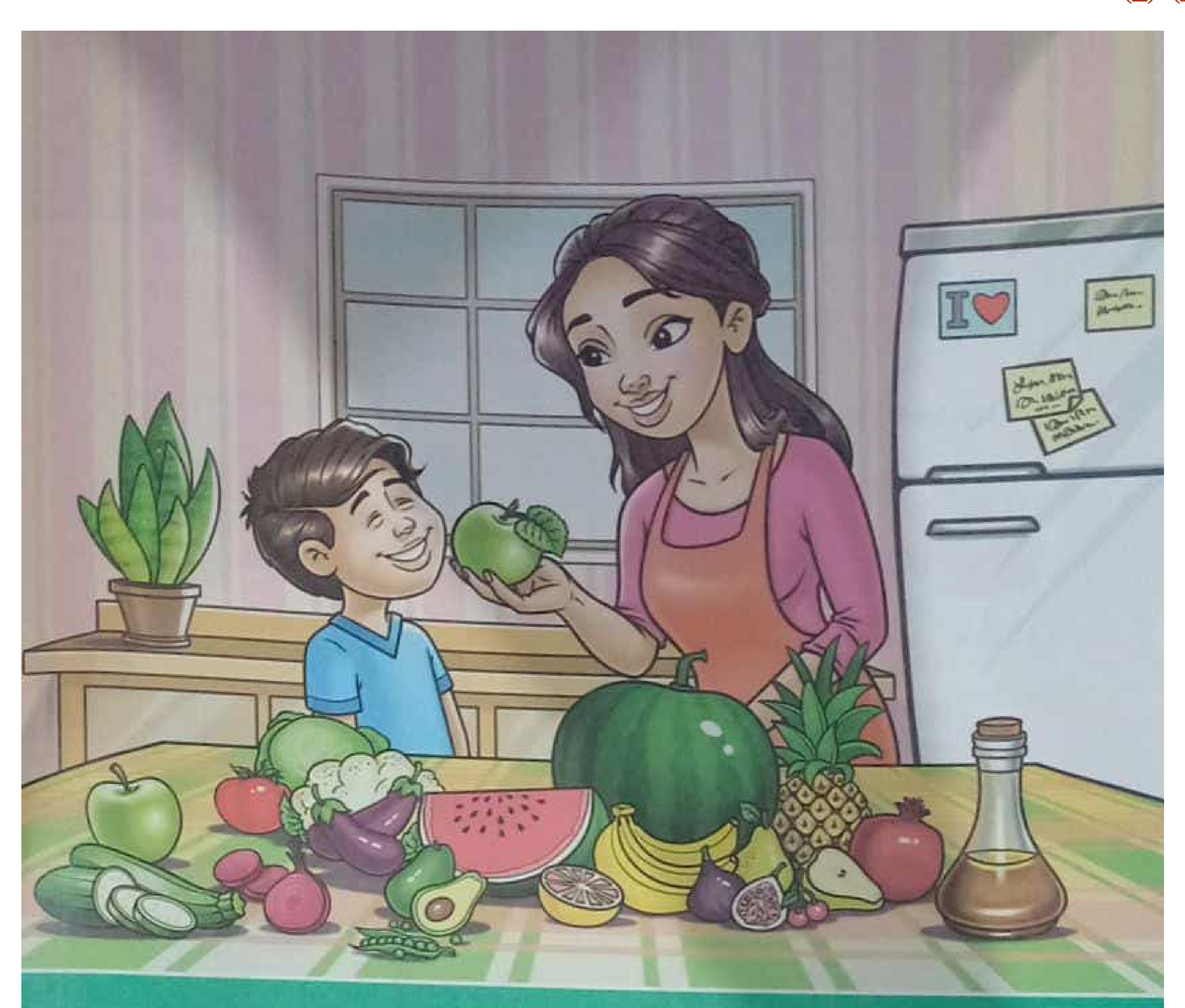
وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفنى

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

4th Primary 2024

FIRST TERM


1
THEME
I discover
myself



Unit 1 I feel good

أشعر أننى بحالة جيدة

Aims of Unit One : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى :

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research and write about foods and how to keep healthy.
  - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الأطعمة وكيف أبقى صحتيا.
- practice making sentences with [and] or [but].
  - أتدرب على صياغة جمل باستخدام [and] أو [but].
- read and listen to a Chinese fable.
  - أقرأ وأستمع إلى حكاية صينية.
- distinguish long and short vowels.
  - أميز بين الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة.
- talk about a place in Egypt.
  - أتحدث عن مكان فى مصر.
- research and make a presentation.
  - أبحث وأقدم عرض.

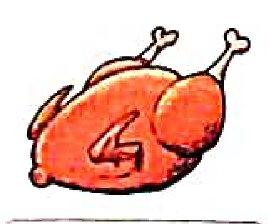
Lesson 1 ▸ Food and Drink





I Vocabulary

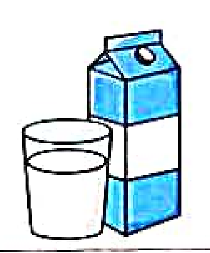
Key vocabulary



chicken دجاج



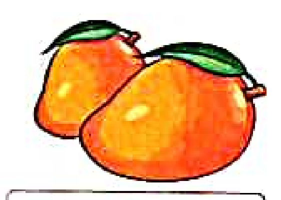
grapes عنب



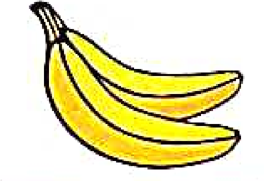
milk لبن



onions بصل



mangoes مانجو



bananas موز

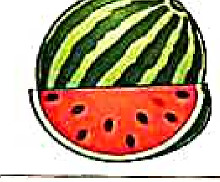


rice أرز





sugarcane قصب السكر



watermelon ثمرة بطيخ





potatoes بطاطس

Extra vocabulary

Egyptian	مصري	healthy	صحي
food	طعام	yummy / yum	لذيذ

Meals الوجبات

breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	dinner	وجبة العشاء	lunch	وجبة الغداء

Did you know ?
In Japan you can buy a watermelon that looks like a pyramid.

هل تعلم ؟ في اليابان يمكنك شراء بطيخة تشبه الهرم

(__) (__)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
raise	يربي	raised	grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew
produce	ينتج	produced	keep	يحافظ/يرعى	kept

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

made ..... for	أعد ..... لـ	That's right.	هذا صحيح.
look delicious	يبدو لذيذًا	Which food ..... ?	أي طعام ..... ؟
raise chickens	يربي دجاج	What else ?	ماذا أيضًا ؟
Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل.	هيا بنا		

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Egyptian food	special - make	Mom made special food for us.
	grow - rice	We grow rice in Egypt.
	raise - chickens	We raise chickens in Egypt.
	farmers - produce	Egyptian farmers produce many things.

05 min Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We made chips from ....

a. bananas b. mangoes c. potatoes d. tomatoes

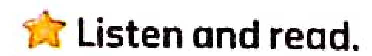
2. I drink a glass of .... for breakfast.

a. onions b. bananas c. milk d. rice

3. We .... chickens to get eggs and meat.

a. raise b. read c. look d. grow

II Listening and Reading



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Where are Mom and Maged ? اين ماجد ووالدته ؟



Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.

الغداء جاهز. لقد أعددت بعض من الطعام الخاص/ المميز لنا.



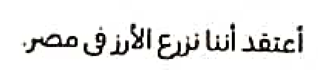
Mom, it looks delicious !

إنه يبدو لذيذًا يا أمي!

Which food comes from our country, do you think ?

في اعتقادك، أي طعام يأتي من بلدنا ؟

I think we grow rice in Egypt.



أعتقد أننا نزرع الأرز في مصر.



Yes, that's right. What else ?



نعم، هذا صحيح. ماذا أيضاً ؟



Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt.



همممم، أعتقد أننا نربي دجاج في مصر.



Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table. Let's eat!

نعم، والطماطم والبصل. ينتج المزارعون المصريون الكثير من الأشياء التي تراها على هذه المائدة. هيا بنا نأكل!





Yum ! لذيذ !

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and match [A] with [B]. .اقرأ وصل العمود [A] بالعمود [B]

[A]	[B]
1. Egyptian farmers grow	☐ a. for lunch.
2. I made salad	☐ b. to build houses for chickens.
3. Tomatoes and onions	☐ c. rice and tomatoes.
4. Which food comes	☐ d. from our country ?
	☐ e. are vegetables.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

.اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

grapes - grow - chicken - sugar

Fruits grow in different times of the year. We (1)........................different kinds of them in Egypt. Mangoes and (2)........................ grow in summer. We get (3)........................from sugarcane. Fruits are delicious.

3 Read the text and answer the questions. .اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة

Farmers are very important to us. They produce a lot of food for us to eat. They grow rice in Egypt. They also grow vegetables like tomatoes and onions. They grow fruits like watermelons and bananas. They can raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

My uncle is a farmer. He works hard on his farm. My cousin helps him grow plants. They grow many kinds of delicious fruit. We get fresh mangoes from the farm every year. There are different animals on his farm like goats, cows and a donkey. I like to visit him every summer. I help him on the farm. It's interesting.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Farmers grow........................ like tomatoes and onions.
   a. fruit　　b. vegetables　　c. birds　　d. chickens
2. Watermelons and bananas are ....
   a. vegetables　　b. fruits　　c. chicken　　d. meat

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why are farmers very important ?

....

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

....

( ) ( )

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جمل صحيحة.

1. farmers – do – What – grow ?

....

2. farmers – Egyptian – produce – things – many.

....

3. are – having – They – chickens – lunch - for.

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... food comes from our country ? - Rice.

   a. Why b. When c. Which d. How

2. .... grow vegetables for us to eat.

   a. Engineers b. Farmers c. Doctors d. Vets

3. We produce vegetables like .... and potatoes.

   a. onions b. bananas c. watermelon d. apples

4. Let's .... lunch.

   a. have b. having c. had d. to have

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

egyptian food is yummy

....

7 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربعة وعشرون (٢٤) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

Food in Egypt

Guiding elements : grow - farmers

....

....

....

....

....

( ) ( )

Lesson 2

- I'm healthy
- Language Focus





I Vocabulary

Vocabulary

candy	حلوى	banana milkshake	لبن مخفوق بالموز
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	cola	مياه غازية(كولا)
scientist	عالم	interesting	شيق/ممتع
unhealthy	غير صحي	sweet	حلو المذاق
video games	ألعاب الفيديو	busy	مشغول
awesome	رائع	team	فريق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
practice	يتدرب	practiced	think	يعتقد	thought
talk	يتحدث	talked	see	يرى	saw

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	on Saturday	في يوم السبت
do sport	يمارس رياضة	go walking	يذهب للتمشية

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Being healthy	sport - school	I do a lot of sport at school.
	candy - fruit	I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.
	basketball	We practice basketball three times a week.
	drink - water	I drink a lot of water to be healthy.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. It's .... to drink water.
   a. bad b. healthy c. unhealthy d. not good
2. Basketball is my favorite ....
   a. sport b. food c. drink d. candy
3. I don't drink .... because it's unhealthy.
   a. water b. juice c. cola d. milk

II Listening and Reading

 **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

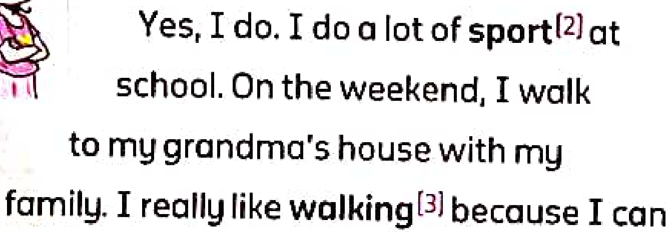
Adam, Dareen and Judy are talking about being healthy.

- ادم ودارين وجودى يتحدثون عن كيف يكونوا أصحاء.



Do you think you're **healthy**[1], Judy ?

هل تعتقدين أنك بصحة جيدة يا جودى ؟



Yes, I do. I do a lot of **sport**[2] at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like **walking**[3] because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat **candy**[4] but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and **watermelon**[5]. My mom makes an **awesome**[6] **banana milkshake**[7] !

[1] صحى
[2] رياضة
[3] السير
[4] حلوى
[5] بطيخ
[6] رائع
[7] لبن مخفوق بالموز

نعم، أعتقد أننى أمارس الرياضة كثيرًا فى المدرسة. فى العطلة الأسبوعية، أسير إلى منزل جدتى مع عائلتى. أنا حقًا أحب السير لأننى أستطيع التحدث إلى والدتى ووالدى. نحن نستطيع أن نرى المنازل والمحلات المختلفة. لا أتناول الحلوى، ولكنى أحب الفاكهة. فاكهتى المفضلة هى الموز والبطيخ. والدتى تصنع لبن مخفوق بالموز رائع !



Do you think you are healthy, Adam ?

هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة، يا آدم ؟



Yes. I'm in a **wheelchair**[8] **basketball**[9] **team**[10] at school.
We practice three times every week.
I **drink cola**[11], but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very **busy**[12].
I play basketball and I play **football**[13] in the park.



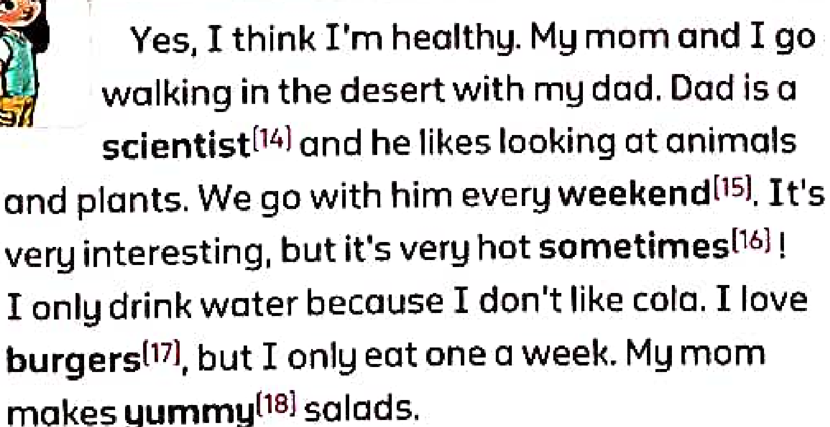
نعم، أنا عضو في فريق كرة السلة على كرسي متحرك في المدرسة. نتدرب ثلاث مرات كل أسبوع. أنا أشرب المياه الغازية (كولا) ، لكنني أريد أن أشرب المزيد من الماء. لا ألعب ألعاب الفيديو لأني مشغول للغاية. ألعب كرة السلة وكرة القدم في الحديقة.

[8] كرسي متحرك
[9] كرة السلة
[10] فريق
[11] يشرب مياه غازية
[12] مشغول
[13] كرة القدم



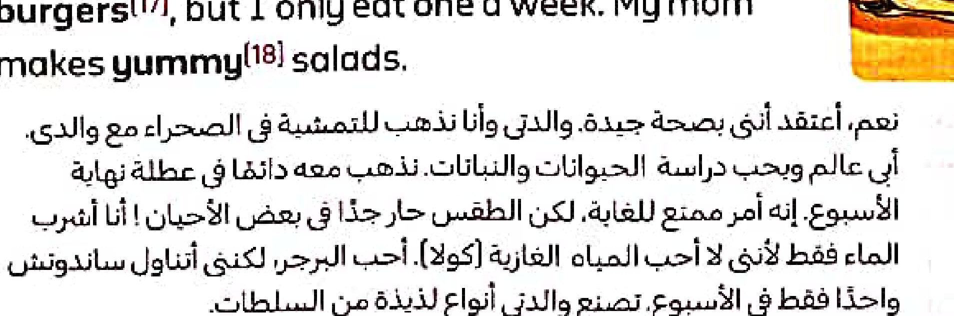
Do you think you are healthy, Dareen ?

هل تعتقدين أنك بصحة جيدة، يا دارين ؟



Yes, I think I'm healthy. My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a **scientist**[14] and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every **weekend**[15]. It's very interesting, but it's very hot **sometimes**[16] !
I only drink water because I don't like cola. I love **burgers**[17], but I only eat one a week. My mom makes **yummy**[18] salads.





نعم، أعتقد أنني بصحة جيدة. والدتي وأنا نذهب للتمشية في الصحراء مع والدي. أبي عالم ويحب دراسة الحيوانات والنباتات. نذهب معه دائمًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه أمر ممتع للغاية، لكن الطقس حار جدًا في بعض الأحيان ! أنا أشرب الماء فقط لأنني لا أحب المياه الغازية (كولا). أحب البرجر، لكنني أتناول ساندوتش واحدًا فقط في الأسبوع. تصنع والدتي أنواع لذيذة من السلطات.

[14] عالِم
[15] عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
[16] أحيانًا
[17] برجر
[18] لذيذ

III Language Focus

▸ A conjunction : is a word that joins words and sentences together.

أداة الربط هي كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل معاً.

 **and** و

To add two ideas together

- نستخدم (and) عندما نضيف أفكار (نربطها) معاً أو أحداث متتالية

I eat vegetables
and
I exercise.



 **but** لكن

To contrast two ideas

- نستخدم (but) عند التعبير عن تناقض فكرتين

I want to play football
,but
my leg hurts.



Pop Quiz on language

▸ Choose the correct answer to complete each sentence.

1. I want to go swimming, ... it is raining.
   a. and b. but

2. Fatima loves ice cream .... chocolate.
   a. and b. but

3. After school, I do my homework .... I eat dinner.
   a. and b. but

4. I practice basketball .... I walk home from school every day.
   a. and b. but

5. My dad is Egyptian, ... my mom is French.
   a. and b. but

6. He speaks English, ... he can't speak Chinese.
   a. and b. but



Notes for parents

- Help your child learn how to use conjunctions "but" & "and".

اعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي كيفية استخدام أدوات الربط استخدامات "but" & "and".

(__) (__)

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Fruits are .... and healthy.
   a. salty   b. sweet   c. hot   d. busy
2. A cat is small, ... the horse is big.
   a. because   b. but   c. so   d. after
3. I like chocolate .... ice cream.
   a. so   b. but   c. and   d. to
4. Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is ....
   a. healthy   b. unhealthy   c. happy   d. sad

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جمل صحيحة.

1. play – the - park – I – in – football.

   ....

2. in – basketball – I'm – team – a – playing.

   ....

3. walking - desert – I – go - the - in.

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

go - easy - hot - scientist

My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a (1) .... and he likes looking at animals and plants. The desert is very interesting, but it's very (2) .... sometimes. We (3) .... with my dad every weekend.

4 Read and match [A] with [B]. اقرأ وصل العمود [A] بالعمود [B].

[A]	[B]
1. I don't eat candy, but	☐ a. and a book.
2. I need a pen	☐ b. with water and soap.
3. My mom makes	☐ c. are watermelons.
4. My favorite fruits	☐ d. an awesome milkshake.
	☐ e. I like fruit.

5 **Read the text and answer the questions.** اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

I'm Adam. I like sports. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm on a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I'm healthy. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I like to play with my friends in the park. We go to the park on Fridays. My dad is a scientist. He likes looking at animals and plants.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Adam wants to drink more ....
   a. cola b. water c. tea d. juice
2. Adam's favorite sport is ....
   a. basketball b. football c. tennis d. swimming

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When does Adam go to the park ?

   ....

4. How often does Adam practice basketball ?

   ....

6 **Punctuate the following.** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

do you think you're healthy

....

7 **Write an email of about (18 – 24) words about healthy food to your friend Ahmed.** Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@yahoo.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

اكتب رسالة بريد إلكترونى من (١٨ - ٢٤) كلمة عن الطعام الصحى.

Guiding elements : vegetables - exercise

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

- The empty pot
- Pronunciation
- CLIL : Math



I Vocabulary



Key vocabulary

emperor	إمبراطور	palace	قصر	honest	أمين / صادق
competition	مسابقة	gardener	بستاني	honesty	أمانة / صدق

Extra vocabulary

pot	وعاء	garden	حديقة	China	دولة الصين
winning	الفوز	lie	يكذب	seeds	بذور
empty	فارغ	dead	ميت	king	ملك

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
happen	يحدث	happened	say	يقول	said
ask	يسأل	asked	give	يعطي	gave
try	يحاول	tried	win	يفوز	won
water	يروي	watered	lose	يخسر	lost

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

bring ... back	يعيد / يستعيد	look after	يعتني بـ
good at	جيد في	long ago	منذ فترة طويلة

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
An emperor إمبراطور	is someone who is like a king هو الشخص الذي يشبه الملك
A palace قصر	is where an emperor lives حيث يعيش الإمبراطور
honest أمين / صادق	someone who doesn't lie الشخص الذي لا يكذب
competition منافسة / مسابقة	in a competition someone tries to win في المسابقة يحاول الشخص أن يفوز

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The Empty Pot : A Folktale From China الإناء الفارغ



Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the **emperor**[1]. He lived in a beautiful **palace**[2]. One day the emperor said, "There will be a **competition**[3]. I will give a seed to each **gardener**[4]. The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."

"Take the pot and the seed. Plant it." says the emperor. "Make it grow into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me."

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew.

At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants.

"Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng.

"I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng. "But it didn't grow."

"Then you **win**![5]" says the emperor. "The seeds I gave everyone were dead. The seeds cannot grow. Only you are good and **honest**[6]. So you will be the next emperor!"

[1] إمبراطور
[2] قصر
[3] مسابقة
[4] بستاني
[5] يفوز
[6] أمين/صادق

The moral of the story : مغزى القصة

Honesty is more important than winning. الصدق أكثر أهمية من الفوز

عاش تشنغ منذ فترة طويلة في الصين. كان أهم رجل في الصين هو الإمبراطور. عاش في قصر جميل. ذات يوم قال الإمبراطور: "ستكون هناك مسابقة. سأعطي بذرة لكل بستاني. الشخص الذي يستطيع أن يزرع أجمل نبات من البذرة سيكون هو الإمبراطور القادم".

قال الإمبراطور: "خذ القدر والبذرة وازرعها". "اجعلها تنمو إلى نبات جميل، ثم أحضر النبات لي".

كان تشنغ جيدًا جدًا في زراعة الأشياء والاعتناء بحديقته. وضع البذرة في الشمس وأعطاها الماء. ولكن، لم يحدث شيء. حاول تشنغ لأسابيع ولكن لم ينمو أي نبات. كان لدى البستانيين الآخرين نباتات نمت.

في القصر، جميع البستانيين لديهم نباتات جميلة.

سأل الإمبراطور تشنغ "أين نباتك؟" قال تشنغ: "لقد عملت بجد. كنت أسقيها كل يوم، لكنها لم تنمو".

قال الإمبراطور: "إذا أنت تفوز!"، "البذور التي أعطيتها للجميع كانت غير صالحة. البذور لا يمكن أن تنمو. أنت الوحيد الصالح والصادق. لذلك ستكون الإمبراطور القادم!"

Make logical inferences. قم بعمل استنتاجات منطقية.

Learn 1. Who will be the next emperor ? - Cheng.

Practice 2. What is the moral of the story ? ....



III Pronunciation

⭐ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد

Short and Long vowels

Short vowels

- The letter (a) makes the sound /æ/



bag حقيبة

- The letter (i) makes the sound /I/



mix يخلط

- The letter (o) makes the sound /ɒ/



mom أم

Long vowels

- The letters (a - e) make the sound /eɪ/



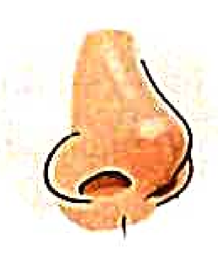
cake كيك

- The letters (i - e) make the sound /aɪ/



rice أرز

- The letters (o - e) make the sound /oʊ/



nose أنف

IV Language

The prefix "re" "re" البادئة

Re:

is a prefix that can be added before the verb and gives the meaning of "again".

(Re) هي بادئة يمكن أن تضاف قبل الفعل وتعطي معنى (مرة أخرى).

Examples :

do → redo يعيد فعل   write → rewrite يعيد كتابه   paint → repaint يعيد طلاء

He **painted** the room **again**. = He **repainted** the room.

He **cleaned** his bike **again**. = He **recleaned** his bike.



Pop Quiz on Phonics & Language

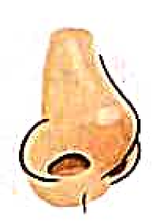
1 Look and write the missing sound. انظر وأكتب الصوت الناقص.

1.



r – c –

2.



n – s –

3.



m – x

2 Read and circle the long vowels.

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي تحتوي على صوت متحرك (طويل).

sad	move	ride	big
map	like	fix	rope

3 Complete the sentences with words from the box. اكمل الجمل بكلمات من المربع.

remake – repaint – reclean – reread

1. The colors of the room are not good. He will .... it.
2. His car is dirty. He will .... it.
3. Please, ... the cake.
4. The story is interesting. She will .... it.

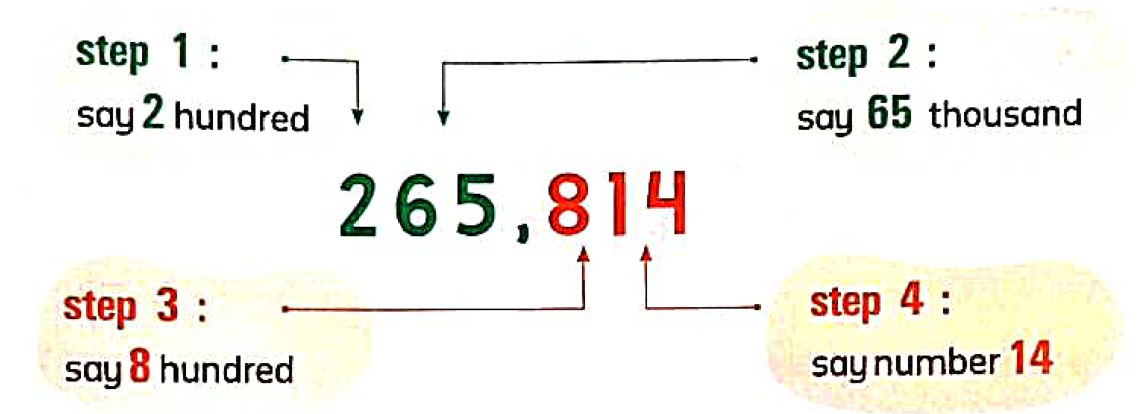
V CLIL : Math

Vocabulary

large numbers أرقام كبيرة	numerical عددى	ascending order ترتيب تصاعدى
sign علامة	comparing مقارنة	digits الأرقام

Learn

How do you read 6-digit numbers ?



Word form : Two hundred, sixty-five thousand, and eight hundred fourteen

544,432 Five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two

178,880 One hundred, seventy-eight thousand and eight hundred eighty

Ascending order

1 How to arrange numbers in ascending order

- **Ascending order** : means to arrange numbers from smallest to largest.

الترتيب التصاعدى هو ترتيب الأرقام من الأصغر إلى الأكبر.

Ex. : Arrange in ascending order:

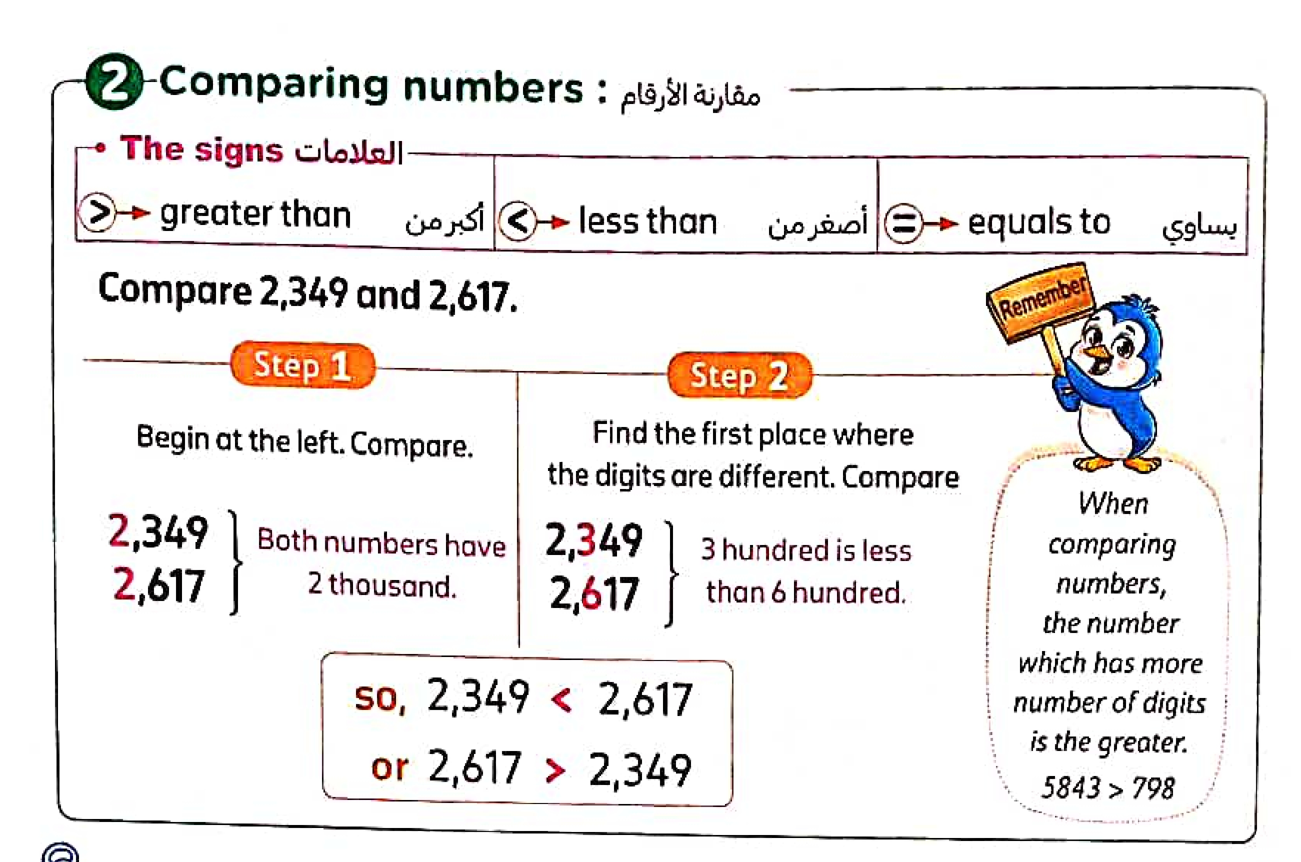
1. 90,780 - 90,230 - 90,633

   90,230 - 90,633 - 90,780

2. 780,050 - 791,005 - 779,500

   779,500 - 780,050 - 791,005





2 Comparing numbers : مقارنة الأرقام

The signs العلامات

> → greater than أكبر من	< → less than أصغر من	= → equals to يساوي

Compare 2,349 and 2,617.

Step 1

Begin at the left. Compare.

2,349
2,617 } Both numbers have 2 thousand.

Step 2

Find the first place where the digits are different. Compare

2,349
2,617 } 3 hundred is less than 6 hundred.

so, 2,349 < 2,617
or 2,617 > 2,349

When comparing numbers, the number which has more number of digits is the greater.
5843 > 798

Pop Quiz on Math

1 Read and write the numbers into letters. اقرأ واكتب الاعداد بالحروف

1. 709,818 ....
2. 870,404 ....
3. 30,210 ....

2 Put the correct sign [< , > , or =]. اقرأ وضع علامة [< ، > أو =].

1. 790,003 ☐ 7,900,303
2. ten million ☐ 10,000,000
3. 202,750 ☐ 203,760

3 Arrange the following numbers in an ascending order. رتب الأرقام التالية ترتيب تصاعدى.

1. 698,881 - 690,882 - 690,880

The order is : ---,--- - ---,--- - ---,---

2. 30,000 - 30,120 - 18,700

The order is : --,--- - --,--- - --,---

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. اسمع واكتب صح أو خطأ.

1. Plants are living things. ( )
2. Some plants are big and some are small. ( )
3. Plants don't need water to grow. ( )
4. We don't need to take care of plants. ( )

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. is – plant – Where – your ?

....

2. are – honest – and – You – good.

....

3. will – competition – a – There – be.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The .... is someone who is like a king.

a. teacher b. farmer c. emperor d. vet

2. Someone who is .... , does not lie .

a. beautiful b. ugly c. honest d. happy

3. " .... " means to paint again.

a. Repaint b. Paint c. Painting d. Painted

4. He is good .... looking after his garden.

a. for b. at c. of d. next

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

garden – lie – palace – honest

Once upon a time, there was a rich king. He lived in a (1) .... He was (2) .... and all people loved him. He had a very beautiful (3) .... and it was full of many flowers.

( ) ( )

5 Read and match (A) with (B). .[B] اقرأ وصل العمود [A] بالعمود

(A)	(B)
1. Cheng was good	☐ a. an emperor lives.
2. The gardener looks after	☐ b. the competition.
3. A palace is where	☐ c. the sun.
4. I won	☐ d. at growing.
	☐ e. his garden.

6 Read the text and answer the questions. .اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

One day, an emperor in China gave the gardeners some seeds to grow. The emperor told the gardeners that the one who could grow the most **beautiful** plant, he would be the next emperor. Cheng was one of the gardeners.

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew. At the end, Cheng won because the seeds were dead. Only Cheng is honest and good. So, he would be the next emperor.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "**beautiful**" means ....
   a. bad   b. ugly   c. lazy   d. nice
2. The emperor gave seeds to the ....
   a. doctors   b. gardeners   c. vets   d. teachers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What was Cheng good at ?

....

4. Who would be the next emperor ?

....

7 Punctuate the following. .ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي

the gardener was good at growing

....

UNIT 1



- Writing : Food from Damietta
- Presentation





Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

land	أرض	guavas	جوافة	fisherman	صياد سمك
crops	محاصيل	governorate	محافظة	nutrients	عناصر غذائية

Extra vocabulary

wheat	قمح	lemons	ليمون	Damietta			محافظة دمياط
life	حياة	part	جزء	Domiati	دمياطى	people	ناس

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

rich in	غنى بـ / ملئ بـ	famous for	مشهور بـ
good for	جيد لـ	catch fish	يصطاد السمك

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Damietta governorate	cheese - famous	Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese.
	goats - cows	Goats, cows and sheep live in Damietta.
	farmers - guavas	The farmers grow tomatoes, wheat, lemons and guavas.
	people - live in	About 1.5 million people live in Damietta.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

05 min

▸ Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. .... catch fish in the sea.
   a. Vets b. Fishermen c. Doctors d. Farmers
2. We need to grow .... to make bread.
   a. lemons b. potatoes c. wheat d. guava
3. Damietta is an Egyptian ....
   a. governorate b. park c. palace d. garden

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Food from Damietta
الطعام من محافظة دمياط

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The **land**[1] in Damietta **governorate**[2] is **rich in**[3] **nutrients**[4]. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, **wheat**[5], **lemons**[6], grapes, and guavas.

Fishermen[7] **catch**[8] thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very **famous**[9].

About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. **Life**[10] is good in Damietta !

[1] أرض
[2] محافظة
[3] غني بـ
[4] عناصر غذائية
[5] قمح
[6] ليمون
[7] صيادون
[8] يصطاد
[9] مشهور
[10] حياة

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn 1. What is the land of Damietta rich in ?
- Nutrients.

Practice 2. What do the farmers grow in Damietta ?
....

3. How many people live in Damietta governorate ?
....

الأرض بمحافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية. يمكن للمزارعين زراعة الأرز، الطماطم، البطاطس، القمح، الليمون، العنب والجوافة.
الصيادون يصطادون آلاف الأسماك من البحر. يتم تربية الأبقار، الماعز والأغنام بمحافظة دمياط أيضًا. الجبن الدمياطي مشهور جدًا.
حوالي واحد ونصف مليون شخص يعيشون في هذا الجزء من مصر. الحياة جيدة في دمياط!

تنوية الاختبارات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Read and match [A] with [B]. اقرأ وصل العمود [A] بالعمود [B].

[A]	[B]
1. Damietta is a	☐ a. potatoes and wheat.
2. The farmers grow	☐ b. famous governorate.
3. Guava is my	☐ c. and sheep.
4. Fishermen catch thousands of	☐ d. fish in the sea.
	☐ e. favorite fruit.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

catch – live – goats – grow

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can (1)........................ rice, tomatoes, wheat and grapes. Fishermen (2)........................ thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, (3)........................ and sheep live in Damietta governorate. Domiati cheese is very famous.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جمل صحيحة.

1. famous – cheese – for – Domiati – is – Damietta.

....

2. good – Damietta – Life – is – in - governorate.

....

3. is – What – Damietta – for - famous ?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in ....

a. sugar b. nutrients c. leaves d. money

2. I want to be a .... to catch fish every day.

a. teacher b. doctor c. fisherman d. farmer

3. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes .... potatoes.

a. and b. so c. but d. next

4. About 1.5 million Egyptians live .... Damietta governorate.

a. between b. on c. in d. under

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I live in Minya. Minya is a governorate in Upper Egypt. Farmers can grow cotton, corn, wheat, dates and sugarcane in Minya. It is famous for "black honey". It is made from sugarcane. There are many interesting places in Minya that many tourists like to visit it. About six million people live in Minya.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about "........................".

a. Damietta b. Minya c. Fishermen d. Luxor

2. Black honey is made from ....

a. wheat b. cotton c. corn d. sugarcane

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many people live in Minya? ....

4. Where is Minya? ....

6 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR [24] words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربعة وعشرين [٢٤] كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

Damietta governorate

Guiding elements:

- What's Damietta famous for?
- How is life in Damietta?

....

....

....

....





Make logical inferences from the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استنتاج بعض المعلومات التى تكون موجودة بشكل غير مباشر فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص جيدًا تستطيع من خلال الأحداث القيام باستنتاج هذه المعلومات.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

I'm Noha. I live in Damietta. The land in Damietta is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta!

شرح الحل اقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا لكى تتمكن من استنتاج معلومات أخرى مثلًا :

* الأرض فى دمياط غنيه بالعناصر الغذائية فنستنتج انها جيده لزراعة المحاصيل.
* تقول نهى أن الحياة جيده فى دمياط فنستنتج انها سعيدة هناك.

1. Do you think the land in Damietta is good for growing crops?

- Yes, because it's rich in nutrients.

2. Is Noha happy in Damietta? Why?

- Yes, because life is good in Damietta.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

I'm Judy. I do a lot of sports at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon.

1. Is Judy healthy or unhealthy?

....

2. What healthy food does Judy like?

....

3. Does Judy like unhealthy food?

....



يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (الطعام المصرى) و (محافظة دمياط) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1 – Review your vocabulary

▶ **Write the meaning :**

Egyptian food

- أرز ....
- يربى ....
- ينتج ....
- وجبة غداء ....
- لذيذ ....
- بصل ....

Damietta governorate

- عناصر غذائية ....
- يصطاد ....
- جبن ....
- حياة ....
- مزارعين ....
- عنب ....

Step 2 – Sentences

▶ **Complete the sentences :**

Egyptian food

1. Egyptian food is very ....
2. Egyptian farmers .... many things.
3. We .... chickens in Egypt.
4. We grow .... and onions in Egypt.

Damietta governorate

1. .... is good in Damietta.
2. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in ....
3. Fishermen .... thousands of fish.
4. Domiati .... is very famous.

Step 3 – Topics

▶ **Write a paragraph using the sentences :**

Egyptian food

....

....

....

....

....

▶ **Write an email using the sentences :**

Damietta governorate

....

....

....

....

....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Healthy lifestyle

I'm healthy[1]. I do a lot of sports at school[2]. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family[3]. I really like walking[4]. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit[5]. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon[6].

2 A scientist

I'm a scientist[7]. I like looking at animals and plants[8]. I go walking in the desert[9]. It's a very interesting job[10]. It's also a difficult job[11]. It's very hot in the desert[12].

3 Foods in Egypt

A lot of food we eat come from our country[13]. We grow many crops in Egypt[14]. Farmers grow rice, tomatoes and onions in Egypt[15]. We raise chickens in Egypt[16]. Egyptian food is yummy[17]. I like the Egyptian food[18].

4 Damietta governorate

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients[19]. The farmers grow a lot of different fruits[20]. They can grow grapes and guavas[21]. They also grow a lot of vegetables like tomatoes and potatoes[22]. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea[23]. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate[24].

(__) (__)

TEST YOUR SKILLS

I feel good



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

raise – crops – grow – drink

Alaa : Mom, which food comes from our country?

Mom : We grow a lot of (1) .... in our country.

Alaa : I think we grow rice in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, that's right. We (2) .... tomatoes and onions, too.

Alaa : What else?

Mom : We also (3) .... chicken in Egypt.

My Language

2 Read and write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. In winter, it is cold .... (but) wet.
2. It was an easy test, ... (and) I failed.
3. I like reading, ... (so) I don't like watching TV.

My Writing

3 Write an email of about (12 – 18) words about Egyptian food to your friend Yasser. Your name is Hatem and your email address is hatem@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is yasser@gmail.com.

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

............................,

....

....

....

....

....

....

My Project

4 Make a poster about Egyptian food.

◯ قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on Unit 1

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الأولى فى ورقة واحدة



Vocabulary

grapes	عنب
chickens	دجاج
rice	أرز
onions	بصل
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
banana	موزة
tomatoes	طماطم
watermelon	بطيخ
mangoes	مانجو
football	كرة قدم
desert	صحراء
emperor	إمبراطور
palace	قصر
honest	صادق/أمين

Phonics

Short vowels	Long vowels
/æ/ → bag	/eɪ/ → cake
/ɪ/ → mix	/aɪ/ → rice
/ɒ/ → mom	/oʊ/ → nose

Language

1 Conjunctions

and و

To add two ideas together

- نستخدم (and) عندما نضيف أفكار (نربطها) معًا أو أحداث متتالية.

but لكن

To contrast two ideas

- نستخدم (but) عند التعبير عن تناقض فكرتين.

- I eat vegetables **and** I exercise.
- I love burgers, **but** I only eat one a week.

2 The prefix 're' = again

do → redo

write → rewrite

paint → repaint

- He **painted** the room **again**.

= He **repainted** the room.

(__) (__)

Test 1 on Unit 1

نصوص الاستماع و التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب صح أو خطأ.

1. The land in Damietta is rich in energy. [ ]
2. The farmers grow rice, potatoes and wheat. [ ]
3. Fishermen catch thousands of fish. [ ]
4. There are goats, cows and sheep in Damietta. [ ]

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I like oranges, apples .... bananas.
   a. and b. so c. but d. as
2. I want to eat pizza, ... it isn't healthy.
   a. or b. but c. so d. because
3. Damietta is .... for Domiati cheese.
   a. cold b. hot c. famous d. happy
4. Egyptian farmers .... chickens.
   a. give b. play c. raise d. build

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمة من المربع.

make - football - cola - play

I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I drink (1) .... , but I want to drink more water. I don't (2) .... video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball and I play (3) .... in the park.

4 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Do we raise	[ ] a. fruit and vegetables.
2. Egyptian farmers grow	[ ] b. I'm having lunch.
3. The food looks	[ ] c. in our body.
4. What meal are you having ?	[ ] d. delicious.
	[ ] e. chickens in Egypt ?

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Dina. I'm healthy. I do a lot of sports at the club. I practice tennis four times a week. I don't like cola. It is unhealthy. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelons. My mom makes an <u>awesome</u> banana milkshake.

A. **Choose the correct answer.**

1. Dina does a lot of .... at the club.
   a. buildings b. jobs c. sports d. foods
2. The underlined word "**awesome**" means ....
   a. bad b. wonderful c. unhealthy d. late

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Why is Dina healthy?

   ....

4. What are Dina's favorite fruits?

   ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جمل صحيحة.

1. is – growing – He – good - at - plants.

   ....

2. walk - I - school - to - every day.

   ....

3. do – What – farmers – in – produce – Damietta ?

   ....

7 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

i think we grow rice in Egypt

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربعة وعشرون (٢٤) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الارشادية التالية.

Being healthy

Guiding elements :

do sports - fruit and vegetables

....

....

....

....

....

Test 2 on Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب صح أو خطأ.

1. Farmers are very important for us. ☐
2. Farmers produce food for us to eat. ☐
3. Farmers grow tomatoes and onions. ☐
4. They raise cows to get eggs. (المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٣) ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Our house is so old. We need to .... it.
   a. rebuild b. recook c. reread d. redid
2. I like .... very much. We make sugar out of it.
   a. onions b. watermelon c. sugarcane d. grapes
3. I like playing tennis, ... I can't play it well.
   a. because b. so c. but d. and
4. I speak English .... French.
   a. and b. but c. so d. because

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

color - beautiful - friends - repainted

My house was old. I wanted to make it (1) .... I (2) .... it. The new (3) .... was green and red. My friends helped me. (سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٣)

4 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

(A)		(B)
1. We raise (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)	☐	a. is very famous.
2. Domiati cheese (سوهاج - سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)	☐	b. favorite food ?
3. I go walking (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)	☐	c. chickens in Egypt.
4. What's your (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)	☐	d. in the park.
	☐	e. part of Egypt.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. In his village, farmers grow rice, potatoes and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like bananas and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes and chicken. Life is good in the village.

(__) (__)

A. **Choose the correct answer.**

1. Omar lives in a small ....

   a. city b. country c. village d. town

2. The village is famous for making ....

   a. potatoes b. rice c. chicken d. cheese

B. **Read and answer the following questions.**

3. What do farmers raise ?

   ....

4. What does Omar's mom make ?

   ....

[البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٣]

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جمل صحيحة.

1. yummy – mom – My – salad – makes. [سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣]

   ....

2. recleaned – Mona – bike – her. [الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٣]

   ....

3. a lot – sports - My – does - brother - of.

   ....

7 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

egyptian farmers are clever [الشرقية - أبو كبير ٢٠٢٣]

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Egyptian farmers

Guiding elements : grow rice - raise chickens

....

....

....

....

[المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٣]





تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

▸ **Listen and choose the correct answer.** استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Cheng was very good at .... things. [growing – building – making]
2. Cheng put the seeds in the .... [soil – street – sun]

B. Language Functions

▸ **Read and complete the dialogue.** اقرأ واكمل المحادثة.

What – raise – grow

Dad : Which food comes from our country?
Maged : I think we (1) .... rice in Egypt.
Dad : Yes, that's right. (2) .... else?
Maged : I think we (3) .... chickens in Egypt.

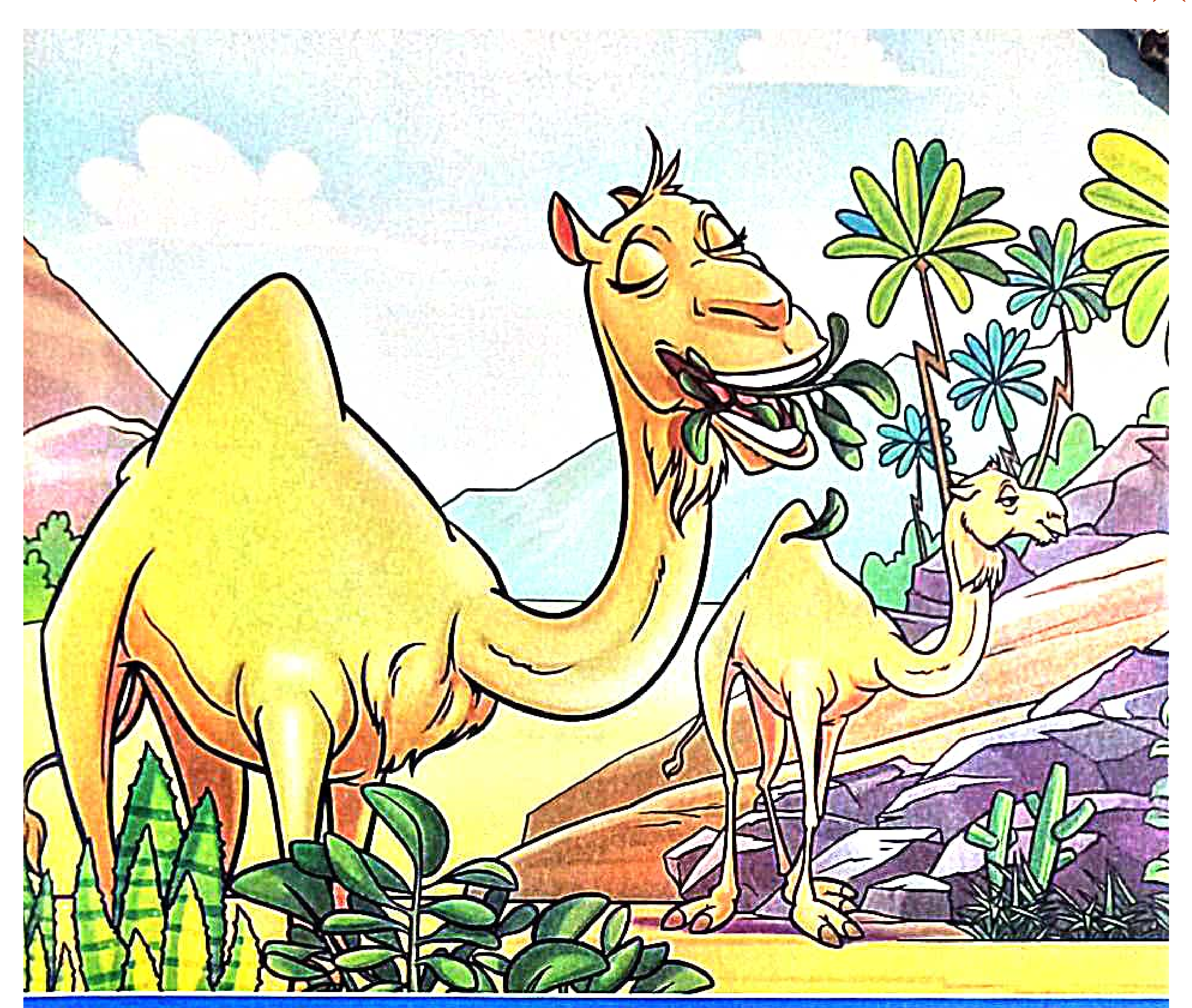
▸ **Rearrange the following.** رتب الجمل التالية.

1. delicious – cheese – is – Domiati.
....
2. cows – Farmers – goats – raise – and.
....
3. person – The honest – not – does – lie.
....

C. Vocabulary and structures

▸ **Choose the correct answer.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Fatima is very clever, ... she studies her lessons well.
   a. or b. and c. but
2. Egyptian farmers .... many vegetables.
   a. produce b. study c. read
3. My mother likes tea, ... she doesn't like coffee.
   a. but b. and c. so
4. .... is your favorite food? - Chickens
   a. When b. What c. Where
5. This village is famous .... growing rice.
   a. in b. to c. for



Unit 2 Desert Animals
الحيوانات الصحراوية

Aims of Unit Two : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية

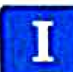
In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.
  - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.
- practice making comparisons.
  - أتدرب على عمل المقارنات.
- listen to a short story.
  - أستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- learn about the difference between the / p / and / b / sounds.
  - أتعلم الاختلاف بين الأصوات / p / و / b /.
- describe two animals.
  - أصف اثنين من الحيوانات.
- write a fact file.
  - أكتب ملف حقائق.
- research and make a poster.
  - أبحث وأصنع ملصقًا.

Lesson 1

▶ Animals in Egypt





I Vocabulary

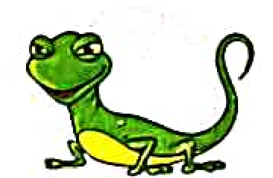
Key vocabulary



snake ثعبان



camel جمل



lizard سحلية



insect حشرة



spider عنكبوت



fennec fox
ثعلب الفنك



crocodile تمساح

Other words



huge ضخم



scary مخيف



helpful متعاون / مفيد



dangerous خطير

Extra vocabulary

country	بلد	job	وظيفة / مهنة	cute	لطيف / جذاب
ugly	قبيح	important	هام	bird	طائر

Did you know ? The Sahara Desert covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but Antarctica is bigger !
هل تعلم ؟ تغطى الصحراء الكبرى أجزاء كبيرة من عشر دول فى إفريقيا. إنها كبيرة جدًا، لكن القارة القطبية الجنوبية أكبر!

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
control	يتحكم	controlled	think	يعتقد	thought
live	يعيش	lived	eat	يأكل	ate
agree	يوافق	agreed	do	يفعل	did

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

That's true.	هذا حقيقي / صحيح.	What about ... ?	ماذا عن ... ؟

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Animals in Egypt	huge - crocodiles	The crocodiles are huge and scary.
	dangerous	Crocodiles are dangerous.
	helpful - spider	Spiders are very helpful.
	eat - insects	Spiders eat insects.
	important - job	Animals do a very important job.
	control - animals	Crocodiles and snakes control the number of small animals.

05 min Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Crocodiles are huge and ....

   a. cute b. scary c. small d. young

2. Spiders are .... They eat insects.

   a. tall b. funny c. huge d. helpful

3. It is .... to swim here. There are crocodiles.

   a. dangerous b. cute c. huge d. ugly

4. The .... is a big animal.

   a. ant b. bee c. camel d. spider

II Listening and Reading

★ **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Are snakes and crocodiles important? هل الثعابين والتماسيح مهمين؟

Look at all these animals that live in our country.

انظروا إلى كل هذه الحيوانات التى تعيش فى بلدنا.



Look at the crocodile, it's huge!

انظروا إلى التمساح، إنه ضخم!



Huge and scary! ضخم ومخيف!



I think the spider is scarier. أعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.

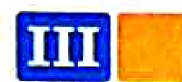
Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders. نعم، لكن العناكب مفيدة جدًا. إنهم يأكلون الحشرات. المزارعون يحبون العناكب.



OK, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're dangerous, aren't they? حسنًا، وماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح؟ إنهما خطيران، أليس كذلك؟

Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

نعم، هذا صحيح، لكنهما يقومان بعمل مهم للغاية. إنهما يأكلان الحشرات والطيور والسحالى. هذا يتحكم فى عدد هذه الحيوانات الصغيرة. نعتقد فى بعض الأحيان أن بعض الحيوانات مخيفة أو قبيحة، لكن كلها مهمة.



III Language

▸ **When we ask for confirmation, we use "the question tag".**
عندما نسأل للتأكد من شئ نستخدم "السؤال المذيل" بمعنى "أليس كذلك".



Spiders are very helpful, **aren't they ?**
العناكب مفيدة جدًا، أليس كذلك ؟



Yes, that's true. They eat insects.
نعم، هذا صحيح. إنهم يأكلون الحشرات.

▸ When the statement is affirmative, the question tag is negative.
عندما تكون الجملة مثبتة، يكون السؤال المذيل منفي.

ex.: - He is clever, isn't he ?

▸ When the statement is negative, the question tag is affirmative.
عندما تكون الجملة منفية، يكون السؤال المذيل مثبت.

ex.: - It isn't dangerous, is it ?

IV Speaking

▸ **To ask and answer about animals.** للسؤال والإجابة عن الحيوانات.

Question	Answer
Which animals are scary ? أي الحيوانات مخيفة ؟	I think crocodiles are scary. أعتقد أن التماسيح مخيفة.
Which animals are dangerous ? أي الحيوانات تكون خطيرة ؟	The snake and the crocodile are dangerous. الثعبان والتمساح حيوانات خطيرة.

• Help your child to identify how to ask using the question tag.
• Help your child ask and answer about animals.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية السؤال مستخدمًا السؤال المذيل.
- ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب أسئلة عن الحيوانات.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

scary – makes – controls – insects

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat (1)................., birds and lizards. This (2)................. the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are (3)................. or ugly, but they are all important.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. A crocodile is
2. Which animals are helpful ?
3. Spiders eat
4. Some animals are scary, but

(B)

- [ ] a. Spiders are helpful.
- [ ] b. they are important.
- [ ] c. insects.
- [ ] d. huge and scary.
- [ ] e. our country.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. scary – is – think – I – the – spider.

....

2. are – dangerous – Which – animals ?

....

3. these - all - at - animals - Look.

....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Nour. I'm researching about animals in Egypt. My mom is helping me. There are many animals in our country. All animals are very important. I think spiders are scary, but they are helpful. They eat insects so farmers like spiders. Crocodiles and snakes are dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they're all important.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about ....

a. clothes b. food c. animals d. books

2. Snakes and crocodiles are ....

a. cute b. dangerous c. nice d. beautiful

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do farmers like spiders ?

....

4. Only cute animals are important. Do you agree ? Why ?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Spiders are very helpful, ... they ?

a. are b. aren't c. weren't d. isn't

2. Snakes eat insects, birds and ....

a. lizards b. elephants c. leaves d. grass

3. What .... the snake ? - It's scary.

a. up b. about c. of d. in

4. Crocodiles are very ....

a. cute b. dangerous c. nice d. sad

6 Punctuate the following.

which animals are cute

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Crocodiles and snakes

Guiding elements : control - dangerous

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2

▶ Amazing Desert Animals

▶ Language Focus





I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

amazing	مدهش	large	كبير	noisy	مزعج - ملىء بالضوضاء
beautiful	جميل	flat feet	أقدام مسطحة	delicious	لذيذ
perfect	مثالي	without	بدون	desert	صحراء

• Extra vocabulary

surprising	مفاجئ - مدهش	fresh water	ماء عذب	hump	سنام (الجمل)
special	مميز	hippo	فرس النهر	strong	قوي
sand	رمال	grass	حشائش	fur	فراء

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
carry	يحمل	carried	come	يأتي	came
cross	يعبر	crossed	drink	يشرب	drank

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• perfect for	مناسب / ملائم لـ	• Be careful !	كن حذرًا !
• for a long time	لمدة طويلة	• stop ... from	يمنع ... من
• get angry	يغضب	• look after	يعتني بـ

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Camels	camels - amazing	Camels are amazing, beautiful and strong.
	carry - desert	They carry things and people to cross the desert.
	milk - delicious	Their milk is delicious.
	fur - clothes	We can use their fur to make clothes.
	flat feet	They have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.
	water	They can live without water for a long time.
	noisy - angry	They are very noisy and they can get angry.

Horses	large - eyes	Horses have large, beautiful eyes.
	eat - drink	They eat grass and drink fresh water.
	live - desert	They can live in the desert.
	people - look after	They need people to look after them.

II Listening and Reading

1 Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

What is surprising about camels ?

ما هو المدهش عن الجمال ؟

Camels[1] are amazing! They're beautiful, **strong**[2] animals. They help us to **carry**[3] things and people to **cross**[4] the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their **fur**[5] to make clothes ! Camels are **perfect**[6] for the desert. Here's why :

Camels have large, **flat feet**[7] so they can walk on the sand.



Camels can live **without**[8] water for a long time.

Camels have **special ways**[9] to close their noses and eyes to **stop**[10] the sand from coming in.

But be careful ! Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.

[1] جمال
[2] قوى
[3] يحمل
[4] يعبر
[5] فراء
[6] مثالى
[7] أقدام مسطحة
[8] بدون
[9] طرق خاصة
[10] يوقف / يمنع



Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار

Learn 1. How can camels' eyes help them in the desert ?
They have special ways to close them to stop sand from coming in.

Practice 2. Why are camels important for people ?
....

الجمال مدهشة ! إنها حيوانات جميلة وقوية. هم يساعدوننا فى حمل الأشياء والأشخاص ليعبرون الصحراء. حليبهم لذيذ. يمكننا استخدام فرائهم لصنع الملابس ! الجمال ملائمة للصحراء. إليكم الأسباب :

- الجمال لديهم أقدام كبيرة، مستوية لذلك يستطيعون المشى على الرمال.
- الجمال تستطيع العيش بدون مياه لفترة طويلة.
- الجمال لديهم طرق خاصة لبغلقوا أنوفهم وعيونهم لمنع الرمال من الدخول فيهم.
- ولكن كن حريص ! الجمال صاخبة للغاية ويمكن أن تغضب.

2 Read the fact file and identify. اقرأ ملف الحقائق وتعرف.

The differences between horses and camels.

	Animals	
	Horse	Camel
How tall is it?	1.4 - 1.8 m	1.8 - 2.0 m
How heavy is it?	380 - 550 kg	400 - 650 kg
How fast is it?	88 kph	65 kph
How long does it live?	25 - 30 years	40 years



Horses have large, beautiful eyes. الخيول لديها عيون كبيرة وجميلة.



Horses eat grass and drink fresh water.
الخيول تأكل الحشائش وتشرب ماء عذب.

Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.
الخيول تستطيع العيش في الصحراء، ولكنهم يحتاجون الأشخاص للعناية بهم.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. Horses have large, beautiful ....
a. ears b. mouths c. noses d. eyes

Practice 2. Horses drink fresh water and eat ....
a. meat b. paper c. grass d. sand

III Language Focus

1 Adjectives ١. الصفات

١. تستخدم الصفة لوصف الاسم وتأتي قبله : ← ex.: - He is a tall man.

٢. تأتي الصفة بعد [verb to be] : ← ex.: - The whale is big.

- kg = kilogram ← «وحدة قياس الوزن» كيلو جرام
- kph = kilometer per hour ← «وحدة قياس السرعة» كيلو متر في الساعة

2 Comparative ٢. المقارنة بين اثنين [شخصين / شيئين]

A. Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

☆ الصفات القصيرة هي صفات ذات المقطع الواحد

وللمقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر في نفس الصفة القصيرة نستخدم :

[adj. صفة + er] + than

• لاحظ أن :

١. يضاف لمعظم الصفات القصيرة [er] وبعدها [than] :

▸ old ⟶ older ▸ fast ⟶ faster

٢. أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من [مقطع واحد] ومنتهية بصوت [ساكن] مسبوق بصوت [متحرك] يضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم تضاف [er] :

▸ big ⟶ bigger ▸ hot ⟶ hotter

٣. الصفات القصيرة المكونة من [مقطع واحد] ومنتهية بحرف [y] مسبوق بصوت [ساكن]، يحذف حرف [y] ويضاف [ier] :

▸ noisy ⟶ noisier ▸ heavy ⟶ heavier

٤. أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من [مقطع واحد] ومنتهية بحرف [e] نضيف حرف [r] فقط :

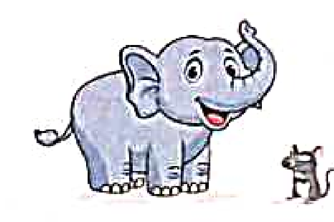
▸ brave ⟶ braver ▸ nice ⟶ nicer

Examples :

 A mouse is smaller than an elephant.

 Dogs are thinner than elephants.

 The cats are nicer than dogs.







B. Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

☆ الصفات الطويلة هي صفات مكونة من مقطعين أو أكثر

dangerous / interesting / enormous / beautiful .. etc.

وللمقارنة بين اثنين في صفة طويلة نستخدم :

more + long adj. [صفة طويلة] + than ....

 A snake is more dangerous than a fox.

 Crocodiles are more dangerous than fish.



• Help your child learn about comparative short/long adjectives. • ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الصفات القصيرة/الطويلة في المقارنة.

3 Questions with "How ... ?"

How + adj. صفة .... ?

◄ تستخدم How tall .... ? للسؤال عن طول شخص أو شجرة أو مبنى.

How tall is the camel ?
- It's 1.8 - 2.0 m.

◄ تستخدم How long .... ? للسؤال عن المدة.

How long does the horse live ?
- The horse lives around 25 - 30 years.

◄ تستخدم How heavy .... ? للسؤال عن الوزن.

How heavy is the horse ?
- It's 380 - 550 kg.

◄ تستخدم How fast .... ? للسؤال عن السرعة.

How fast is the camel ?
- It is 65 kph.



Pop Quiz on Language

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A rabbit is .... than a dog.
   a. small b. smaller c. smallest d. small as
2. Lions are more dangerous .... cows.
   a. as b. like c. than d. the
3. Pizza is .... delicious than vegetables.
   a. more b. as c. larger d. most
4. An airplane is .... than a bicycle.
   a. bigger b. big c. as big d. biggest
5. How .... is the horse ? - It is 88 kph.
   a. fast b. long c. heavy d. old

Notes for parents

- Help your child ask questions using (How + adj.).
- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- ساعد طفلك أن يسأل باستخدام (How) وبعدها (صفة).
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Camels are beautiful, strong animals. ☐
2. Camels can carry people to cross the desert. ☐
3. Camels' milk is delicious. ☐
4. We use camels' fur to make tables. ☐

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. elephants – than – are – thinner – Dogs.

....

2. camels – more beautiful – than – Are – horses ?

....

3. are – for – Camels – perfect – the desert.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. How .... is the horse ? - It's 380 - 550 kg.
   a. long b. fast c. heavy d. tall
2. A snake is .... dangerous than a fox.
   a. much b. more c. a lot d. as
3. Horses eat .... and drink fresh water.
   a. meat b. grass c. sand d. fish
4. Horses can live in the ....
   a. desert b. sea c. water d. river

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I went to the Pyramids last weekend with my family. I rode a beautiful camel. It was interesting. Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, **strong** animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes ! Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. This text is about ....
   a. horses b. camels c. crocodiles d. spiders

2. The underlined word "strong" is the opposite of the word ".........................".

a. perfect b. beautiful c. amazing d. weak

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How can camels help us ? ....

4. Why do camels have flat feet ? ....

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

grass - fresh - eyes - look

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. Horses eat (1).................... and drink fresh water. They have large, beautiful (2)..................... They can live in the desert, but they need people to (3).................... after them. Horses can live for 25 - 30 years.

6 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Horses are faster than	a. than the spiders.
2. Parrots are noisier	b. camels.
3. Camels are perfect for	c. the desert.
4. How fast	d. beautiful eyes.
	e. is the horse ?

7 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

The horses

Guiding elements :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Where can they live ?	in the desert
What do they eat / drink ?	grass/fresh water

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

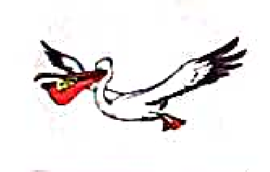
- The Pelican and the Bear
- Pronunciation
- CLIL : Math

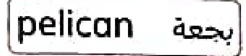




I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary





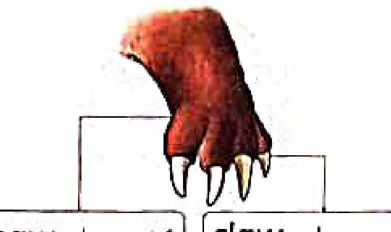
pelican بجعة



bear دب



beak منقار



paw كف حيوان

claw مخلب حيوان

Extra vocabulary

juicy	كثير العصارة	sadly	بحزن	scared	خائف
ready	جاهز - مستعد	kinder	أكثر عطفًا	fun	ممتع
boring	ممل	surprised	مندهش	river	نهر
angry	غاضب	hungry	جائع	story	قصة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
reach	يصل	reached	take	يأخذ	took
describe	يصف	described	feel	يشعر	felt
lift	يرفع	lifted	understand	يفهم	understood

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• look scared	يبدو خائفًا	• Excuse me !	معذرة !
• take .... out	يخرج ...	• at the end of ...	في نهاية ...

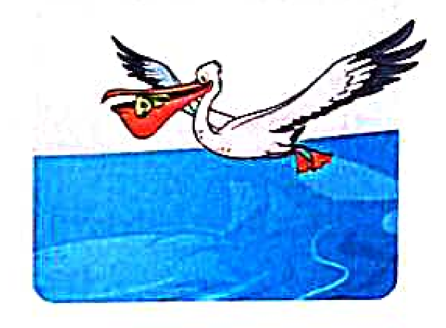
II Listening and Reading

 Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



The Pelican and the Bear
البجعة والدب

A **pelican** [1] and a **bear** [2] are in the river. They are very **hungry** [3]. They are both looking at a big, **juicy** [4] fish.

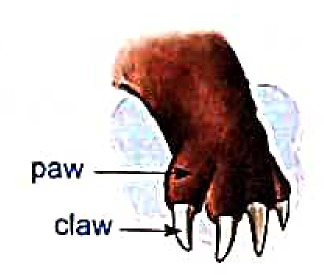


The bear **reaches** [5] for the fish. It lifts its **paw** [6]. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear.

[1] بجعة
[2] دب
[3] جائع
[4] كثير العصارة
[5] يصل
[6] كف [حيوان]
[7] مخالب [حيوان / طائر]
[8] يقول بحزن

"Excuse me," the pelican says, "that's my fish." The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my **claws** [7]. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish." The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it **says sadly** [8].

The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear looks at the pelican. "How do you feel, pelican ?" he asks. "I feel hungry," says Pelican. "I'm bigger and stronger than you," says Bear. "But I think you are hungrier than me. You can have the fish." "Thank you, Bear !" says Pelican. "You are kinder than all the other bears !"



Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

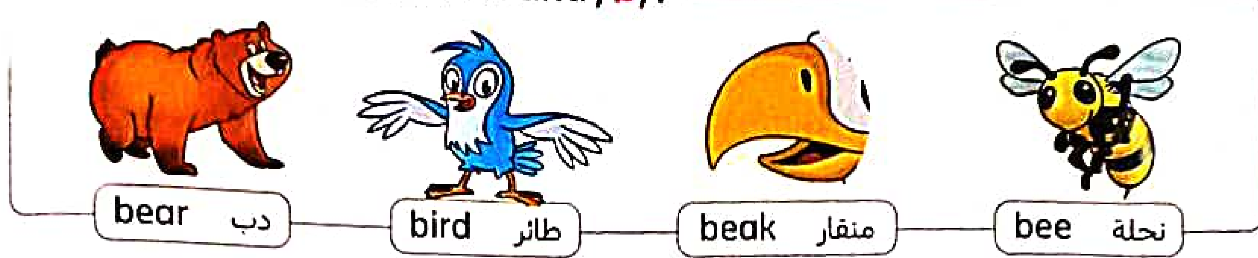
Learn 1. Why does the pelican look scared ?
- Because the bear is stronger.

Practice 2. Who had the fish at the end of the story ?
....

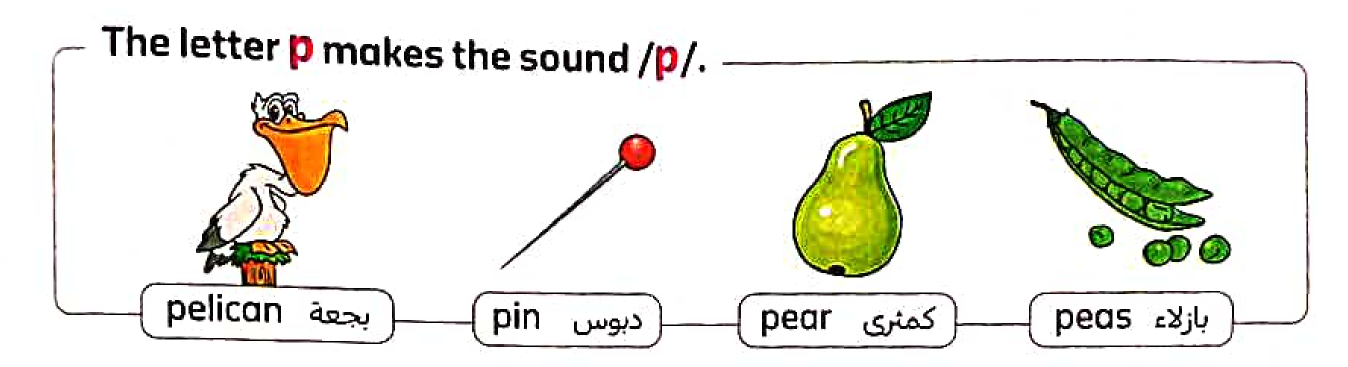
بجعة و دب في النهر. إنهما جائعان جدًا. كلاهما ينظران إلى سمكة كبيرة ومليئة بالعصارة. يصل الدب إلى السمكة، يرفع مخلبه. البجعة تفتح منقارها. إنها جاهزة لإخراج السمكة من الماء. يرى الدب البجعة. ترى البجعة الدب. تقول البجعة : "عفوًا هذه سمكتي". الدب مندهش وغاضب ويرد قائلًا "بجعة، انظري إلى مخالبي. انظري الآن إلى أسناني. هذه سمكتي". البجعة تبدو خائفة تقول بحزن للدب. "أنا آسفة أيها الدب". الدب أقوى من البجعة. ينظر الدب إلى البجعة. يسأل الدب : "كيف تشعرين أيتها البجعة؟" تقول البجعة: "أشعر بالجوع". يقول الدب : "أنا أكبر وأقوى منك. لكنني أعتقد أنك أكثر جوعًا مني. تستطيعين الحصول على السمكة. تقول البجعة : "شكرًا لك أيها الدب! إنك أكثر طيبة من باقي الدببة!"

III Pronunciation

– The letter **b** makes the sound /**b**/.



– The letter **p** makes the sound /**p**/.





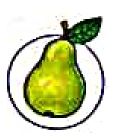
Pop Quiz on Phonics

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

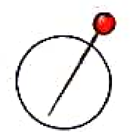
1 Listen and write the missing sound.

1. _ ear

2. _ eas 

3. _ ear 

4. _ elican

5. _ in 

6. _ ird 

2 Listen and circle.

1. bear	2. pin	3. bees
pear	bin	peas

3 Read and circle the odd sound out.

1. bear	pear	beak	bee
2. pin	peas	pelican	bird

IV CLIL : Math "Fractions"

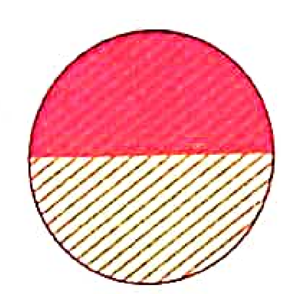


A fraction : الكسر



A fraction is a part of a whole.

الكسر هو جزء من الواحد الصحيح.



A fraction consists of two parts.

الكسر يتكون من جزئين.

1 ←	numerator	البسط
2 ←	denominator	المقام

- The numerator tells how many parts are being identified. - البسط يذكر كم عدد الأجزاء المعدودة.
- The denominator tells the total number of equal parts in the whole. - المقام يذكر العدد الكلي للأجزاء المتساوية.

Learn :

▶ Descending order means to put or start from the largest to the smallest number. الترتيب التنازلي يعني أن تضع أو تبدأ من الرقم الأكبر إلى الرقم الأصغر.

13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 4, 3

▶ When comparing unit fractions, the one with the less denominator is greater.

عندما نقارن بين وحدة الكسور التي تكون قيمة البسط بها [1]، فإن الكسر الذي لديه مقام أقل هو الرقم الأكبر.

$$\frac{1}{1}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{4}$$

- We use fractions in everyday life. - نحن نستخدم الكسور في الحياة اليومية.

For example : على سبيل المثال :

- Here's a simple milkshake recipe : - وصفة لبن مخفوق بسيطة :

$\frac{1}{2}$ a glass of milk, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of banana, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of vanilla ice cream.

- نصف كوب من اللبن، ربع كوب من الموز، ربع كوب من آيس كريم الفانيليا.

▸ **How to read fractions in English.** كيف تقرأ الكسور باللغة الإنجليزية.

1. For numerator we use numbers like (one, two, three ...).
2. For denominator we use ordinal numbers like (half, third, fourth ...).

$\frac{1}{3}$	one - third	$\frac{2}{8}$	two-eighths
$\frac{1}{4}$	one - fourth (one - quarter)	$\frac{1}{2}$	one half



Pop Quiz on Math

1 **Look and put in descending order.** انظر ورتب الكسور ترتيب تنازلي.

1. ☐ $\frac{1}{4}$

2. ☐ $\frac{3}{4}$

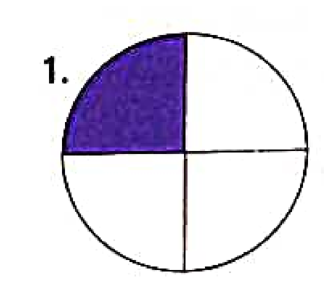
3. ☐ $\frac{1}{2}$

4. ☐ $\frac{1}{1}$

2 **Circle the fraction that shows the fraction of the colored part.**

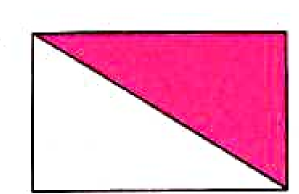
ضع دائرة حول الكسر الذى يظهر الجزء الملون.

1.



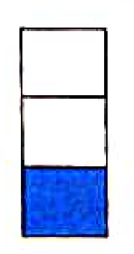
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

2.



$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

3.



$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$



General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. The bear and the pelican are in the forest. ☐
2. The bear is surprised and angry. ☐
3. The pelican says sadly, "I'm sorry". ☐
4. The pelican is stronger and bigger than the bear. ☐

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – the bear – angry – Why ?

....

2. juicy – The fish – and – is – big.

....

3. do – feel – How – you ?

....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The bear is stronger	☐ a. fish.
2. The bear has	☐ b. are hungry.
3. The pelican eats	☐ c. a beak.
4. The pelican has	☐ d. paws and claws.
	☐ e. than the pelican.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

beak - paw - hungry - describe

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very (1) .... They are both looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its (2) .... The pelican opens its (3) .... It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

(__) (__)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A pelican and a bear are in the .... to eat fish.
   a. home b. sky c. street d. river
2. The bear is .... than the cat.
   a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. big as
3. The bear is .... than the pelican.
   a. the strong b. strongest c. stronger d. strong
4. A pelican opens its ....
   a. claw b. beak c. hand d. paw

6 Punctuate the following.

the pelican looks scared

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements.

The bears

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Fact file :

What do bears eat ?	• fish
How can they catch fish ?	• paws and claws

....

....

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4&5

- ▶ Writing : Animal fact file
- ▶ Project



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



fennec fox
ثعلب الفنك



rhim gazelle
غزال الريم



coat
فراء حيوان



horns
قرون (حيوان)

• Extra vocabulary

mice فئران	warm دافئ	heat حرارة	thick سميك	leaves أوراق شجر

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
protect	يحمي	protected	hear	يسمع	heard
need	يحتاج	needed	lose	يفقد	lost
weigh	يزن	weighed			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• look for	يبحث عن	• protect ...from	يحمي... من
• during the day	أثناء النهار	• walk around	يتجول

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Rhim gazelles	look – beautiful	Rhim gazelles look very beautiful.
	Sahara Desert	They live in the Sahara Desert.
	leaves – grass	They eat leaves and grass.
	yellow-white coats	They have yellow-white coats.
	drink – water	They don't need to drink a lot of water.
Fennec fox	live – desert	The fennec fox lives in the desert.
	eat - mice	The fennec fox eats insects, lizards and small mice.
	ears - big	Its ears are big.
	heat – lose	The fox loses heat from its ears during the day.
	fur – warm	The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm at night.

II Reading and Writing

Animal fact file

1 Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

Rhim gazelle

How long is a rhim gazelle's horn? كم طول قرن غزال الريم ؟	20 – 30 cm من ٢٠ - ٣٠ سم
How heavy is a rhim gazelle? كم وزن غزال الريم ؟	20 – 30 kg من ٢٠ - ٣٠ كجم
How long does it live? كم المدة التي يعيشها ؟	about 14 years حوالي ١٤ عامًا
What color is its coat? ما لون فراء هذا الحيوان؟	yellow-white لون أبيض يميل إلى الاصفرار

يبدو غزال الريم جميل جدًا. يعيش هذا الحيوان في الصحراء الكبرى، ويتجول بحثًا عن العشب وأوراق الشجر والنباتات ليأكلها. لديه آذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة. لديه فراء لونه أبيض يميل إلى الاصفرار حيث يحميهم من أشعة الشمس. وهو مثل الجمال، لا يحتاج إلى شرب الكثير من المياه.

2 Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

The fennec fox



The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 - 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big ! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

يعيش ثعلب الفنك في صحارى شمال أفريقيا. إنه أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى. يبلغ ارتفاعه ٢٠ سم. يزن حوالي ١ كيلوجرام. يبلغ طوله ٣٠ - ٤٠ سم. أذنيه كبيرة للغاية. يحتاج ثعلب الفنك إلى أذان كبيرة لكي يسمع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة. يأكل ثعلب الفنك الحشرات والسحالي والفئران الصغيرة. خلال النهار، يكون الجو حارًا في الصحراء. يفقد ثعلب الفنك الحرارة من أذنيه. في الليل، يكون الجو بارد. يحافظ فراء ثعلب الفنك الكثيف على دفئه.

Writing Skill :

Fact file ملف حقائق

A fact file is a collection of information about a particular subject or a product.

ملف الحقائق عبارة عن مجموعة من المعلومات عن موضوع معين أو منتج معين.



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

★ Look, read and write.

1

Fact File	
Where does it live ?	....
What does it eat ?	....
How heavy is it ?	....

Paragraph

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It is 20 centimeters high and 30 – 40 centimeters long. It eats insects, small lizards and mice. It weighs around 1 kg. Its ears are big.

2 **Fact File**

Rhim gazelle

How long is a rhim gazelle's horn ?	20 – 30 cm
How heavy is a rhim gazelle ?	20 – 30 kg
How long does it live ?	about 14 years
What color is its coat ?	yellow-white

Paragraph

....

....

....

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. plants – leaves – and – Rhim gazelles – eat.

....

2. ears – has – fox – big – The fennec.

....

3. are – dangerous – Dolphins – not.

....

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)		(B)
1. Rhim gazelles look	☐	a. insects and lizards.
2. The fennec fox eats	☐	b. very beautiful.
3. Rhim gazelles have	☐	c. big beak.
4. The fennec fox lives in	☐	d. the deserts.
	☐	e. long horns.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

birds – leaves – coats – horns

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, (1) .... and plants to eat. They have big ears and long (2)..................... . They have yellow-white (3)..................... which protect them from the sun.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It weighs around 1 kilogram. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The fennec fox loses .... from its ears.
   a. cold b. heat c. fur d. weight
2. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm at ....
   a. morning b. afternoon c. night d. sunshine

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How heavy is the fennec fox? ....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Rhim gazelles have yellow-white .... to protect them from the sun.
   a. tails   b. beaks   c. wings   d. coats
2. Rhim gazelles have .... ears and long horns.
   a. bigger   b. big   c. biggest   d. the biggest
3. The fennec fox is .... than other foxes.
   a. the smallest   b. smallest   c. small   d. smaller
4. The fennec fox lives in the ....
   a. sea   b. desert   c. sky   d. trees

6 Punctuate the following.

where do rhim gazelles live

....

7 Write an email of about TWENTY FOUR [24] words to your friend Sami to tell him about rhim gazelles. Your name is Adam and your email address is adam@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is sami@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements:

beautiful - the Sahara Desert,

New Message

From:

To:

Subject:

....,

....

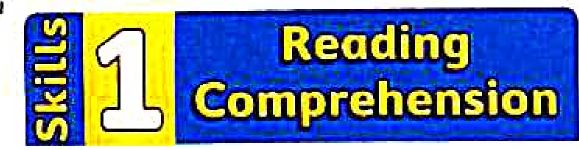
....

....

....

....

....



Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة) للنص.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read the text and learn how to answer :

Camels are amazing ! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes ! Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.

شرح الحل بعد قراءة كل الجمل نلاحظ أن النص يدور حول (Camels)

1. The text is about ....
Or : The main / general idea of the text is about ....
Or : The text talks about ....
Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. Horses b. Camels c. Birds d. Spiders

2. Summarize the text in one sentence.

- Camels are amazing animals.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read the text and answer the questions :

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

1. The text is about "...................." .

a. Bears b. Crocodiles
c. Pelicans d. Rhim gazelles

2. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (الخيول) و (ثعلب الفنك) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1
Review your vocabulary

▶ Write the meaning :

Horses

حشائش ....

عذب ....

اشخاص ....

كبير ....

صحراء ....

يعتنى بـ ....

Fennec fox

يفقد ....

آذان ....

سميك ....

فراء ....

دافئ ....

حار ....

Step 2
Sentences

▶ Complete the sentences :

1. Horses have .... , beautiful eyes.
2. Horses eat ....
3. Horses drink .... water.
4. Horses can live in the ....

1. The fennec fox needs big ....
2. The fennec fox .... heat from its ear.
3. The fennec fox has .... fur.
4. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it ....

Step 3
Topics

▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences :

Horses

....

....

....

....

....

....

▶ Write an email using the sentences :

"Fennec fox"

....

....

....

....

....

(_) (_)



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 The fennec fox

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa[1]. It's smaller than other foxes[2]. It has big ears[3]. It needs big ears to hear insects[4]. It eats insects, lizards and small mice[5]. It weighs about 1 kilogram[6].

2 Camels

Camels are amazing[7]! They are perfect for the desert[8]. They are strong animals[9]. They can live for a long time without water[10]. They have large, flat feet to help them walk on the sand[11]. They help people to cross the desert[12].

3 Rhim gazelles

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful[13]. They live in the Sahara Desert[14]. They have big ears[15]. They have long horns[16]. They have yellow-white coats to protect them from the sun[17]. They don't need to drink a lot of water[18].

4 Different animals

New Message

From : nour@gmail.com

To : ali@gmail.com

Subject : Different animals

Dear Ali,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you. There are different animals that live in our country[19]. Spiders are helpful[20]. Spiders and snakes eat insects[21]. Farmers like spiders[22]. Crocodiles are huge and scary, but they do a very important job[23]. They control the number of small animals[24].

Yours,

Nour

TEST YOUR SKILLS



Desert Animals



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Reading

1 Read and complete the dialog with words in the box.

control – helpful – like – crocodiles

Noha : Hi, Ghada. Do you like animals?

Ghada : Sure. They are helpful.

Noha : Which animals are scary?

Ghada : I think (1) .... are scary.

Noha : Are they (2) ....?

Ghada : Yes, they (3) .... the number of small animals.

My Language

2 Read and write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. The blue car is .... (old) than the red car.
2. Elephants are bigger .... (the) cats.
3. Driving is .... (most) dangerous than walking.
4. Children are .... (young) than adults.

3 Write sentences to compare.

1. giraffe / dangerous / lion

....

2. table / big / chair

....

My Writing

4 Punctuate the following.

what does the fennec fox eat

....

5 Write an email of THREE (3) sentences about the fennec fox to your friend Sara.

Your name is Mariam. Your email address is mariam@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sara@gmail.com.

From :..............................

To :..............................

Subject :..............................

..............................,

....

....

....

....

....

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



Review on unit 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية في ورقة واحدة



Vocabulary

snake	ثعبان
camel	جمل
lizard	سحلية
insect	حشرة
spider	عنكبوت
crocodile	تمساح
bear	دب
fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك
fur	فراء (حيوان)
beak	منقار
horns	قرون (حيوان)
claws	مخالب (حيوان)
dangerous	خطير
huge	ضخم
desert	صحراء

Phonics

/p/	/b/
pear	bird
pelican	bee
pin	beak
peas	bear

Language

1 Comparative adjectives

A Short adj. :

short adj. + [er] + than

Horses are faster than camels.





A mouse is smaller than an elephant.



B Long adj. :

more + long adj. + than



A snake is more dangerous than a fox.





2 Asking questions

• How tall .... ?	كم الطول ....؟
• How long .... ?	كم المدة ....؟
• How heavy .... ?	كم الوزن ....؟
• How fast .... ?	كم السرعة ....؟

Test 3 on Unit 2

نصوص الاستماع و التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. The fennec fox lives in the river. ( )
2. The fennec fox is smaller than other foxes. ( )
3. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects. ( )
4. It loses heat from its mouth. ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Is the new hotel .... than the old one?
   a. nice　b. nicer　c. nicest　d. most nice
2. The plane is faster .... the train.
   a. the　b. then　c. there　d. than
3. Horses like to drink .... water.
   a. sweet　b. dirty　c. fresh　d. salt
4. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it ....
   a. warm　b. cold　c. cool　d. icy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fur - desert - live - carry

Camels are amazing. They help us to (1) .... things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their (2) .... to make clothes! Camels are perfect for the (3) ....

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The crocodile is	( ) a. flat feet.
2. The horses have	( ) b. large, beautiful eyes.
3. Camels have large,	( ) c. insects, lizards and small mice.
4. Rhim gazelles live	( ) d. in the desert.
	( ) e. huge and scary.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are many beautiful animals live in the desert. Rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

(_) (_)

A. **Choose the correct answer.**

1. Rhim gazelles eat ....
   a. meat   b. leaves   c. small animals   d. insects

2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a. coats   b. horns   c. rhim gazelles   d. hooves

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. Where do rhim gazelles live ?

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – bear – The pelican – the – smaller – than.

....

2. are – helpful – Spiders – very.

....

3. horse – How – is – tall – a ?

....

7 Punctuate the following.

the bear is stronger than the pelican

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR [24] words using the guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Camels"

Guiding elements :

flat feet - carry things

....

....

....

....

....



Test 4 on Unit 2

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. The crocodile is small. ( )
2. Spiders are very helpful. ( )
3. Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous. ( )
4. Crocodiles eat vegetables and fruit. (الشرقية - ديرب نجم ٢٠٢٣) ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. An elephant is .... than a bird. It's about 2000 kg.
   a. bigger b. big c. biggest d. as big
2. Crocodiles are .... dangerous than spiders.
   a. many b. the c. more d. most
3. Some birds have long .... They use them to eat.
   a. pens b. beaks c. peas d. horns
4. Rhim gazelles have yellow-white ....
   a. coats b. leaves c. ears d. eyes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

dangerous – animals – camel – big

My family likes to visit the zoo. Last Friday, we visited Giza Zoo. We saw different (1) .... Some animals are (2) .... like snakes. Some animals help us like the (3) .... It is strong. (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٣)

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Spiders are	( ) a. It's huge and scary.
2. A crocodile is dangerous. (الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٣)	( ) b. in the deserts.
3. A fennec fox lives (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)	( ) c. very helpful.
4. Horses like to (الجيزة - جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)	( ) d. eat grass.
	( ) e. every morning.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Camels are very helpful. They carry things and people in the desert. They can live without water for a long time.

Horses are helpful, too. They are very fast and they can carry heavy things, too. Horses can live up to thirty years while camels can live up to forty years. Horses and camels are good for the desert.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ....

a. Gazelles b. Horses c. Camels d. Animals in Egypt

2. Horses can live up to .... years.

a. thirty b. twelve c. forty d. ten

B. Read and answer the following questions :

3. Where do camels live ?

....

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. ears – has – The – fox – big – fennec. (الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)

....

2. dangerous – Crocodiles – animals – are. (الدقهلية - المطرية ٢٠٢٣)

....

3. strong – Camels – and – are – beautiful. (الفيوم - سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

....

7 Punctuate the following.

does a fennec fox live in Egypt (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣)

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The fennec fox

Guiding elements :

ears - heat (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٣)

....

....

....





تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

▶ **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

1. Horses eat .... (grass – insects – fish)
2. Horses can live in the .... (forest – grassland – desert)

B. Language Functions

▶ **Read and complete the dialogue.**

insects – eat – hear

Sarah : What does the fennec fox (1) .... ?

Huda : It eats (2) .... , small lizards and mice.

Sarah : Why does the fennec fox have big ears ?

Huda : To (3) .... small animals and insects.

C. Vocabulary and structures

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.**

1. I think dogs are .... than birds.
   a. nice b. nicer c. nicest
2. Rhim gazelles have long ....
   a. horns b. mouth c. feet
3. Spiders eat ....
   a. camels b. insects c. birds
4. Noha is younger .... Fatma.
   a. then b. the c. than
5. Turtles are .... than rabbits.
   a. slower b. slow c. slowest



(_) (_)



Unit 3 Why do we grow plants ?

لماذا نزرع النباتات ؟

Aims of Unit Three : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.

  - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن النباتات وكيف تساعدنا.
- practice making sentences with the superlative.

  - أتدرب على تكوين جمل باستخدام صيغة صفات التفضيل.
- read, listen to, and understand a short story.

  - أقرأ، أستمع إلى وأفهم قصة قصيرة.
- learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.

  - أتعلم وأقول كلمات بحروف ساكنة مدمجة / sl / و / sw /.
- write the life cycle of a sunflower.

  - أكتب عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.
- research and write a short report.

  - أبحث وأكتب تقرير قصير.

Lesson 1

Plants and seeds



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

soil تربة زراعية

roots جذور

leaf ورقة شجر

shoot برعم - نبتة

seeds بذور

flower زهرة

The germination process عملية الإنبات

Extra vocabulary

plants نباتات	balcony بلكونة (شرفة)	tomato fruits ثمار الطماطم	inside داخل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
water	يسقى	watered	grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew
die	يموت	died	find	يجد	found
plant	يزرع	planted	become	يصبح	became

leaf ⟶ leaves

* لاحظ أن: تجمع كلمة leaf بحذف حرف الـ (f) ووضع (ves) في نهاية الكلمة.

Did you know that we eat this cacao seed ? Chocolate comes from this plant. هل تعلم أننا نأكل بذور الكاكاو ؟ تأتي الشيكولاتة من هذا النبات

( ) ( )

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

That's awesome!	هذا رائع !	under the soil	تحت التربة
above the soil	فوق التربة	(be) called	يُسمى / يُدعى
on the balcony	في الشرفة	Let's + inf.	هيا بنا

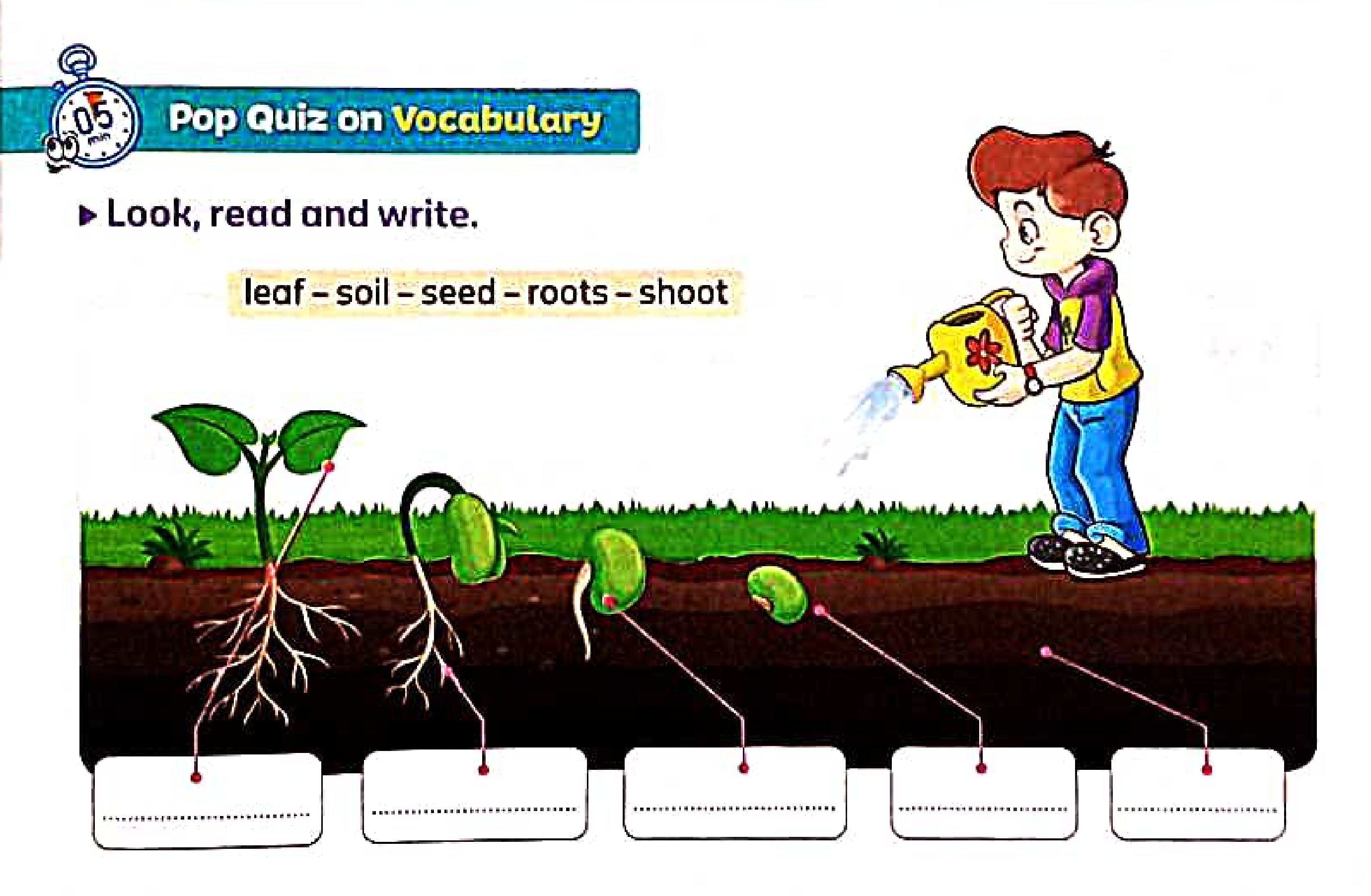
Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Tomato plants	green - red	Tomatoes are green before they are red.
	seeds - inside	Tomatoes have seeds inside.
	seed - grow	We plant a seed and the plant grows.
	water - plant	We water the plant every day.
	roots - soil	The roots grow under the soil.
	shoot - above	The shoot grows above the soil.
	flowers - become	The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

05 min Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Look, read and write.

leaf – soil – seed – roots – shoot



....

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

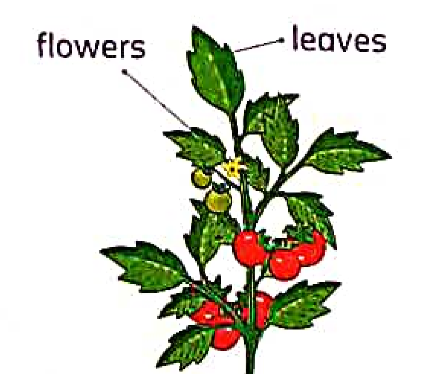
• Seleem and his dad are talking about tomato plants.

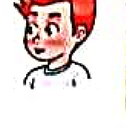
يتحدث سليم ووالده عن ثمار الطماطم.



Come and look! تعال وانظر!







What is it, Dad?
ما هذا، يا أبي؟



Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers?

تنمو نباتات الطماطم لدينا في الشرفة!
انظر، هل تستطيع أن ترى الأوراق والزهور؟



Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green?
أوه أجل، لكن لماذا الطماطم خضراء اللون؟



Tomatoes are green before they are red.
تكون الطماطم خضراء اللون قبل أن تصبح حمراء اللون.



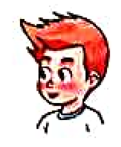


How do we grow new tomatoes? كيف نزرع طماطم جديدة؟



Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

تحتوي الطماطم على بذور في الداخل. نستطيع أخذ البذور وزرع طماطم جديدة! نزرع البذرة وينمو النبات. وهذا ما يسمى بعملية الإنبات. نحن نسقي النبات كل يوم وتنمو الجذور تحت التربة الزراعية. ينبت النبات أزهارًا وتصبح الأزهار ثمار طماطم.



That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch!
هذا رائع! لقد وجدت طماطم حمراء اللون! هيا نتناولها لوجبة الغداء!





Audioscript

"The Germination Process"

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

"عملية الإنبات"

نحن نضع البذرة في التربة. البذرة تحتاج لضوء الشمس والمياه حتى تستطيع أن تنمو. البذرة تنتج جذور تحت التربة. ثم تنمو النبتة وتصبح أطول فوق التربة. في النهاية، النبات الكامل ينمو بأوراق شجر وأزهار.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What does the seed need?
- The seed needs sunlight and water.

Practice 2. Where does the seed grow roots?
....

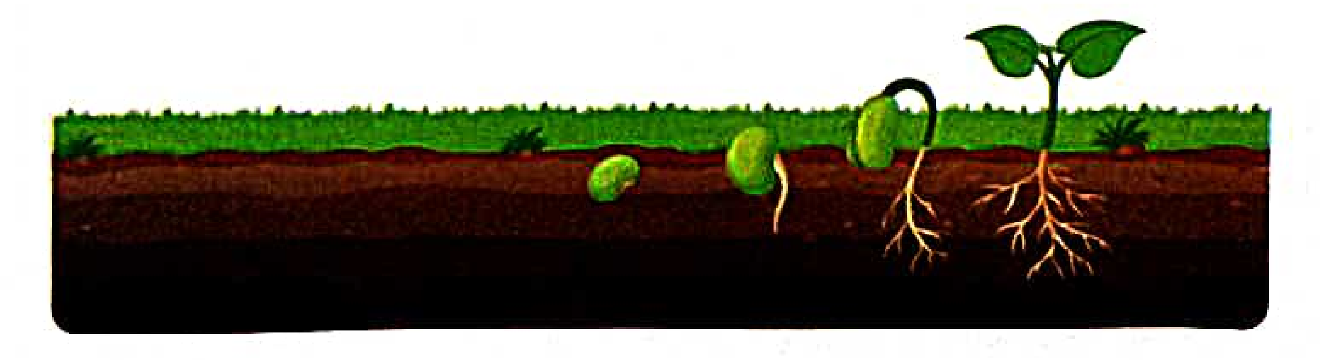


Pop Quiz on Listening and Reading



▶ Look and write the germination process.

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....



(__) (__)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Tomatoes have roots inside. ☐
2. We can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes! ☐
3. We plant a seed and the plant grows. ☐
4. Sunflowers are green before they are red. ☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

germination - flowers - red - soil

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! They have leaves and (1) .... Tomatoes are green before they are (2) .... We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called (3) ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. Tomatoes have
2. Our tomato plants are
3. Tomatoes are green
4. How do we grow

(B)

☐ a. growing on the balcony.
☐ b. tomatoes?
☐ c. before they are red.
☐ d. seeds inside.
☐ e. meat inside.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. new – tomatoes – How – we – grow – do?

....

2. green – Why – tomatoes – are?

....

3. water – We - every – the plant – day.

....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tomatoes are delicious and important. We use tomatoes in most of our food. Everyone can grow tomatoes on their balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the

plant grows. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about "........................".
   a. flowers b. tomato plants c. mango trees d. peas plants
2. There are .... inside tomatoes.
   a. roots b. flowers c. plants d. seeds

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in a sentence.

   ....

4. What color are tomatoes before they are red ?

   ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Let's .... a red tomato for lunch !
   a. have b. having c. has d. to have
2. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called ....
   a. information b. fraction c. germination d. cutting
3. The roots grow .... the soil.
   a. above b. under c. on d. next
4. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a. roots b. seeds c. shoots d. leaves

7 Punctuate the following.

can you see the leaves and the flowers

....

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

How to grow tomatoes

Guiding elements : seeds – germination

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2

- Plants in Egypt
- Language Focus







I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

sunflower
زهرة عباد الشمس

rose وردة

lotus flower
زهرة اللوتس

bean plant
نبات الفول

reed
نبات القصب / الحريد

daisy
زهرة الأقحوان (اللؤلؤ)

acacia شجرة السنط
(شجر الصمغ العربي)

tamarisk
شجرة الطرفاء
(نحيلة الأغصان)

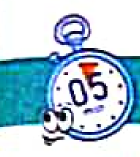
orange tree
شجرة البرتقال

Extra vocabulary

habitat	موطن - بيئة	maize	ذرة	agricultural	زراعي
around	حوالي	living things	كائنات حية	lake	بحيرة

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Plant habitats	farmers – food	Farmers grow food for us to eat.
	agricultural	Farmers work in an agricultural habitat.
	river – water	Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.
	rain – desert	There's not much rain in the desert.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Lotus, sunflower and .... are kinds of flowers.
   a. rose b. tomatoes c. beans d. potatoes
2. .... grow food for us to eat.
   a. Doctors b. Nurses c. Vets d. Farmers
3. There is fresh water in the ....
   a. seas b. rivers c. oceans d. deserts



II Reading

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. الموطن (البيئة) هو المكان حيث الكائن الحي يعيش وينمو.

1 Look and read انظر واقرأ.



Plant habitats مواطن النبات

1 Agricultural habitat البيئة الزراعية

Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

المزارعون يعملون هنا. يزرعون الطعام لنا لنأكل.



2 Rivers and lakes الأنهار والبحيرات

Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

تحتاج النباتات القريبة من الأنهار والبحيرات إلى الكثير من المياه.



3 Desert habitat البيئة الصحراوية

There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار هنا. النباتات التي تعيش في الصحراء لا تحتاج الكثير من المياه.



Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. In which habitat do farmers grow food for us to eat?
- In agricultural habitat.

Practice 2. What do plants near rivers need to grow?

....

2 Read and identify اقرأ وتعرف

Where do these plants live?

Plants نباتات

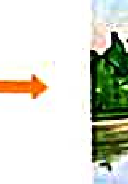
Habitats مواطن



lotus flower

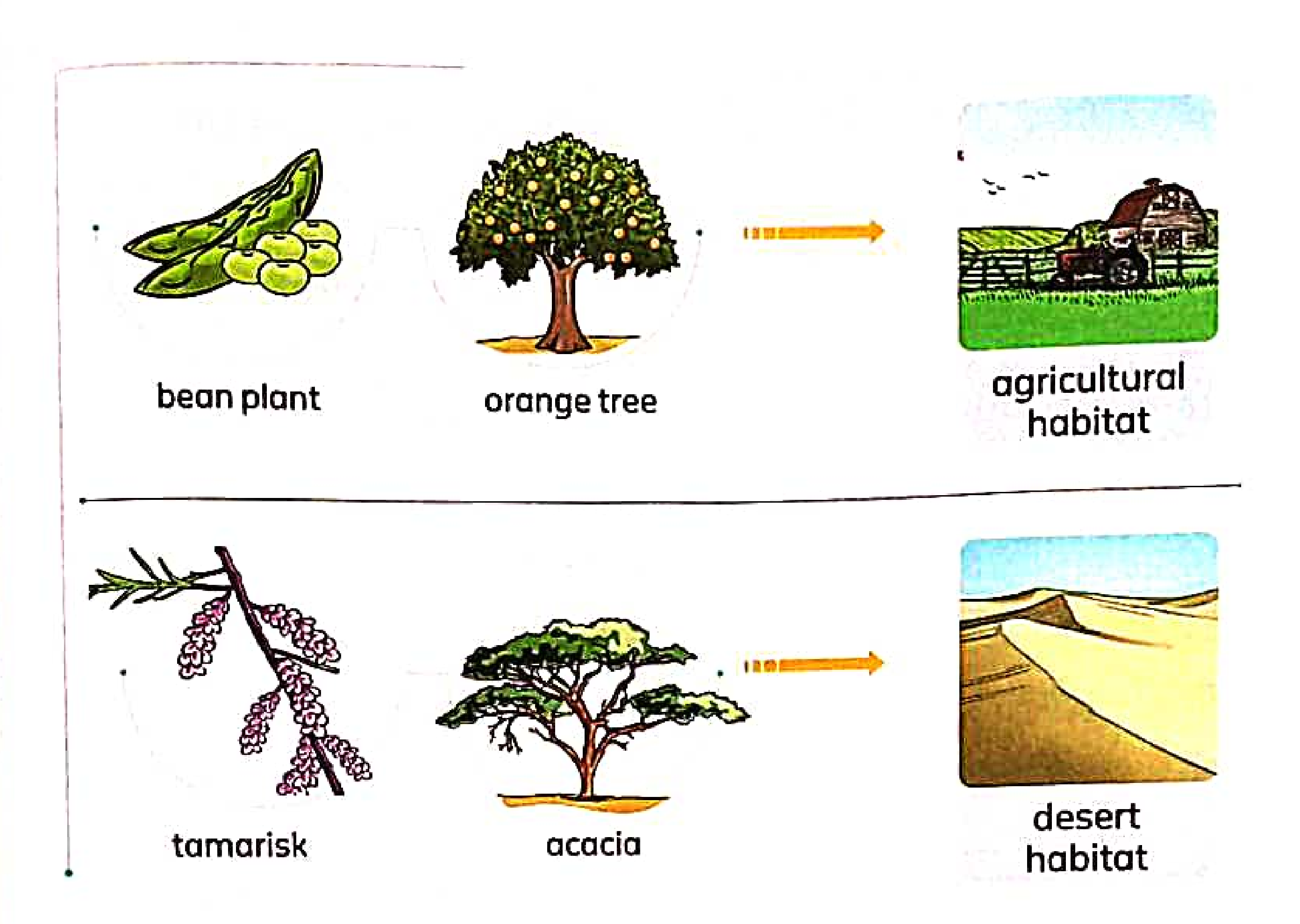


reed





rivers or lakes



3 Read the fact file and compare. اقرأ ملف الحقائق وقارن.

The differences between the flowers

	daisy	rose	sunflower
How big is the flower? كم حجم الزهرة؟	2.5 – 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 – 15 cm
How tall is it? كم طولها؟	10 cm	60 cm	1 – 3.5 m
How long does it live? كم المدة التي تعيشها؟	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it? كم وزنها؟	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف

- The rose is taller than the daisy. The sunflower is taller than the rose. The sunflower is the tallest flower.

الوردة الحمراء تكون أطول من زهرة الأقحوان. زهرة عباد الشمس أطول من الوردة. زهرة عباد الشمس هي أطول زهرة.



III Language Focus

Remember :

Comparative adj. : - The rose is taller **than** the daisy.
- The sunflower is **more beautiful than** the cactus.

1 Superlative adjectives صفات صيغة التفضيل

A. Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (تفضيل واحد على مجموعة في صفة ذات مقطع واحد) نضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة (est) :

the + صفة + est

1 معظم الصفات →	يضاف إليها est	fast + est → fastest
2 الصفات المنتهية بـ حرف ساكن قبله حرف متحرك في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد →	يضاعف الحرف الأخير و يضاف بعده est	big + est → biggest
3 الصفات المنتهية بـ حرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد →	تحول (y) إلى (i)	heavy + est → heaviest happy + est → happiest
4 الصفات المنتهية بـ حرف (e) في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد →	يضاف إليها st	nice + st → nicest brave + st → bravest



The giraffe is the tallest animal.



The cheetah is the fastest animal.



The turtle is the slowest animal.



My cat is the nicest in our street.

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the superlative adjectives.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن صفات صيغة التفضيل.

B. Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين في الصفات الطويلة (التي تتكون من أكثر من مقطع) نستخدم :

the + most + (long adj.) صفة طويلة

The rose is the most beautiful flower.



The lion is the most dangerous animal.



2 How big .... ? تستخدم للسؤال عن الحجم



- How big is the daisy?
- It is about 4 cm.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My city is the .... place to live.
   a. nicer b. nicer than c. nicest d. nice
2. I think the rose is the .... flower.
   a. much beautiful b. most beautiful
   c. beautiful d. more beautiful
3. The elephant is .... fattest animal.
   a. then b. the c. than d. that
4. The sunflower lives the ....
   a. longer b. long c. longer than d. longest
5. The rose is .... than the daisy.
   a. taller b. tall c. the tallest d. tallest

6. The daisy lives shorter .... the rose.

a. than b. they c. there d. then

7. The lion is the .... dangerous animal.

a. more b. much c. most d. many

8. The sunflower is the .... flower.

a. tall b. taller than c. tallest d. taller

9. Sharks are .... sea animals.

a. more dangerous than b. the most dangerous
c. dangerous than d. as dangerous

10. The sunflower is the .... flower.

a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. as big

11. I have the .... suitcase.

a. heaviest b. heavy c. heavier d. as heavy

12. What is the .... animal in the world ?

a. scarier b. scariest c. scarier than d. scare

2 Complete using comparative and superlative adjectives.

adjective	comparative	superlative
beautiful	....	....
fast	faster than	....
difficult	....	....
small	....	the smallest
slow	....	....
big	....	the biggest
nice	nicer than	....

Notes for parents

• Help your child to remember how to make comparative and superlative adjectives.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتذكر كيف يكون صفات المقارنة وصيغة التفضيل.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

water – grow – desert – lakes

There is not much rain in the desert. Plants that live in the (1) .... do not need a lot of (2) .... Farmers can't (3) .... plants there.

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Plants near the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert, so we can find acacia plant and tamarisk there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is about ".................... ".
   a. Habitats   b. Clothes   c. Festivals   d. Houses
2. We can find acacia plant and .... in the desert.
   a. reed   b. tamarisk   c. orange tree   d. lotus flower

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do farmers grow in the agricultural habitat ?
   ....
4. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes ?
   ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. live - do - Where - you ?
   ....
2. bag - heaviest - I - the - have.
   ....
3. to - We - grow - eat - plants.
   ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The sunflower is .... flower.
   a. heavier   b. the heaviest   c. more heavy   d. heavy

2. The lion is .... dangerous than the fox.
   a. the most   b. much   c. more   d. as

3. A .... is a place where living things live and grow.
   a. habitat   b. fur   c. cinema   d. library

4. A lotus flower grows near the .... It needs a lot of water.
   a. desert   b. rocks   c. river   d. mountains

5 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Plants near rivers	☐ a. agricultural habitat.
2. There is not much rain	☐ b. in the desert habitat.
3. Farmers work in the	☐ c. than the daisy.
4. The rose is taller	☐ d. need a lot of water.
	☐ e. don't need a lot of water.

6 Punctuate the following.

how big is the flower

....

7 Write an email of about Twenty Four (24) words about the desert habitat to your friend Nour. Your name is Fares. Your email address is fares@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nour@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : not much rain - plants

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

- Lucas and his farm
- Pronunciation
- CLIL : Math



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

billion	مليار	million	مليون	rainwater	مياه الأمطار
polluted air	هواء ملوث	farm	مزرعة	dry	جاف

Extra vocabulary

liter	لتر	grandparents	الأجداد	special	مميز / خاص
difficult	صعب	life	حياة	noise	ضوضاء
land	أرض	lemons	ليمون	the United States	الولايات المتحدة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
decide	يقرر	decided	buy	يشترى	bought
use	يستخدم	used	bring	يحضر	brought
change	يتغير	changed	make	يصنع / يجعل	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- at first — في البداية
- on the farm — في المزرعة
- have a good life — لديه حياة جيدة
- proud of — فخور بـ
- work very hard — يعمل بجد
- decide to — يقرر أن

Learn :

1. **It's important to turn desert land into farmland to get more crops.**
   ١. من المهم تحويل الأرض الصحراوية إلى أرض زراعية لكى نحصل على محاصيل أكثر.
2. **Farms are good for the land because farmers look after the soil.**
   ٢. المزارع مفيدة للأرض لأن المزارعون يعتنون بالتربة الزراعية.



II Listening and Reading



Listen, look and read. استمع، انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Lucas and his farm
لوكاس ومزرعته

The beginning

Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very special **farm**[1]. Forty years ago, the **land**[2] was very dry. There were no farms. No one wanted to live there. Lucas's grandparents lived in the **city**[3], but they didn't like it. They didn't like the **polluted air**[4] and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.



The middle

At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted millions of **seeds**[5]. They used **rainwater**[6] to water the seeds. They needed about a billion liters of water a year. They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They **brought**[7] animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.



[1] مزرعة
[2] أرض
[3] مدينة
[4] هواء ملوث
[5] بذور
[6] مياه الأمطار
[7] أحضروا / جلبوا

The end

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.



Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn 1. Where does Lucas live ?
- He lives on a farm in the United States.

Practice 2. How did grandparents water the seeds ?
....

يعيش لوكاس في مزرعة في الولايات المتحدة. إنها مزرعة مميزة جدًا. قبل أربعين عامًا، كانت الأرض جافة جدًا. لم يكن هناك أي مزارع. لا أحد كان يريد العيش هناك. عاش أجداد لوكاس في المدينة لكنهم لم يعجبهم ذلك. لم يحبوا الهواء الملوث والضجيج. أرادوا أن يمتلكوا مزرعة. فقرروا شراء بعض الأراضي. في البداية، كانت الحياة صعبة جدًا. لقد عملوا بجد وزرعوا ملايين البذور. استخدموا مياه الأمطار ليسقوا البذور. كانوا بحاجة إلى حوالي مليار لتر من الماء في السنة. لقد زرعوا الكثير من الفاكهة مثل البرتقال والليمون. جلبوا الحيوانات إلى الأرض. زرعوا الأشجار والزهور. اليوم، يعيش لوكاس في المزرعة مع والدته ووالده. هم سعداء ويعيشون حياة جيدة. هم فخورون جدًا بأجداد لوكاس. الذين استخدموا النباتات في جعل الأرض خضراء اللون.

III CLIL : Math

Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million **palm trees**[1] across the country. This **means**[2] we need to plant billions of seeds.

[1] نخيل
[2] يعني / يقصد

تريد مصر أن تزرع أكثر من ١٠٠ مليون من أشجار النخيل في جميع انحاء البلد. وهذا يعني أننا في حاجة لزراعة مليارات من البذور.

A Billion



A billion is a thousand million :

المليار هو ألف مليون

1,000,000,000

★ **Look and identify.** انظر وتعرف.

The place-value chart

مخطط القيمة المكانية

billions	millions			thousands			units		
billions مليارات	hundred millions مئات الملايين	ten millions عشرات الملايين	millions ملايين	hundred thousands مئات الآلاف	ten thousands عشرات الآلاف	thousands آلاف	hundreds مئات	tens عشرات	ones آحاد
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

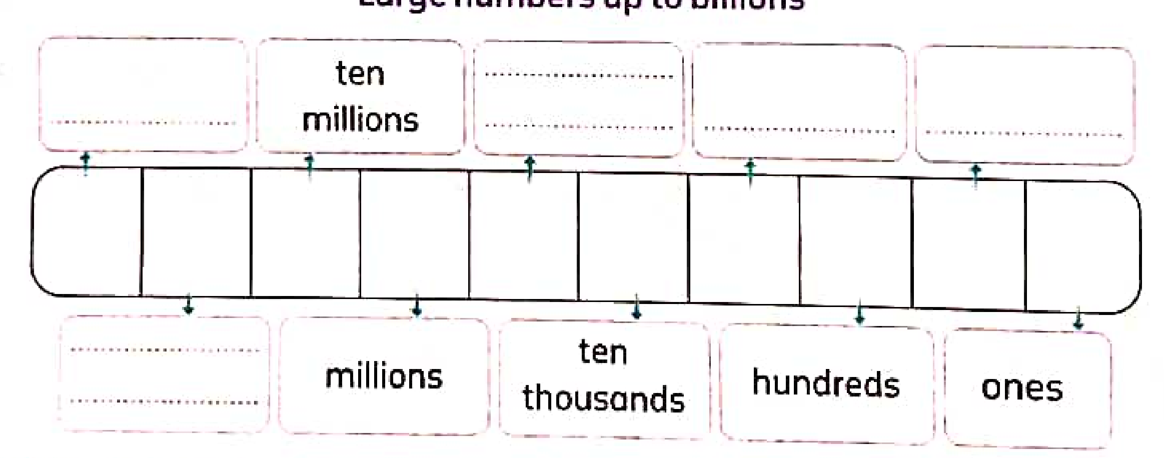
Identify. تعرف.

1	one
10	ten
100	a hundred
1,000	a thousand
10,000	ten thousand
100,000	a hundred thousand
1,000,000	a million
10,000,000	ten million
100,000,000	a hundred million
1,000,000,000	a billion

Pop Quiz on Math

1 Read and complete. اقرأ واكمل.

billions - hundred millions - hundred thousands - tens - thousands



2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

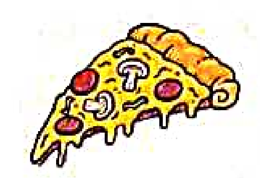
1. 1,000,000,000
2. 100,000,000
3. 1,000
4. 100,000
5. 10,000

a. a thousand
b. ten thousand
c. a billion
d. a hundred million
e. a hundred thousand

IV Pronunciation

s + l = sl The letters **sl** make the sound **/sl/**.


sleep ينام


slice شريحة


slippers نعال

s + w = sw The letters **sw** make the sound **/sw/**.


sweep
يكنس



switch
مفتاح كهربائي


sweets
حلوى

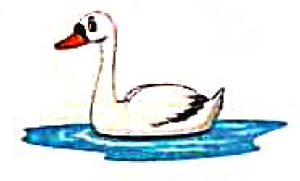

swan
بجعة


swim
يسبح



Pop Quiz on Phonics

1 Look and write the missing sound.

1.

_ _ an

2.

_ _ ice

3.

_ _ ippers

2 Read and circle the odd sound out.

1. sweep – sleep – swan – swim
2. slippers – sleep – slices – sweets
3. switches – sweep – sweets – slippers
4. slice - swim - sweep - swan



V Language

The suffix "-ful". .[-ful] اللاحقة

The suffix :

is a letter or group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word.

اللاحقة هى إضافة حرف أو مجموعة من الأحرف فى نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

Learn :

We use the suffix [-ful] at the end of many adjectives. It means full of.

تستخدم اللاحقة [-ful] فى نهاية العديد من الصفات وهى تعنى كثير من.

Adjectives end by the suffix [-ful]			
Base word		**Adjective**	
care	رعاية / يعتنى	careful	حذر / حريص
help	يساعد / مساعدة	helpful	مساعد / متعاون
color	يلون / لون	colorful	زاهى الألوان
use	يستخدم / استخدام	useful	مفيد
beauty	جمال	beautiful	ذات جمال / جميل

He's a careful driver.
هو سائق حذر.





Notice : The letter "y" changes to "i" in the word "beautiful".

لاحظ أن الحرف "y" يتغير إلى "i" فى كلمة "beautiful".

Notes for parents

• Help your child identify the meaning of the suffix.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على معنى اللاحقة.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Ali is .... He drives his car carefully.
   a. carefully b. careful c. careless d. care
2. Someone who always helps people is ....
   a. helpful b. helpless c. helpfully d. help
3. This book is .... I will read it again.
   a. use b. using c. useful d. usage
4. Salma is .... like her mother.
   a. beautiful b. beauty c. more beauty d. as beauty
5. These flowers are ....
   a. color b. colors c. colorful d. colorfully
6. She usually .... about her children.
   a. careful b. cares c. carefully d. careless
7. My brother likes the .... of nature.
   a. beauty b. beautiful c. beautifully d. more beautiful

2 Add the suffix [-ful] to make new adjectives and write the new word.

base	+	suffix	=	new word
hope	+	ful	=	hopeful
help	+	________	=	________
thank	+	________	=	________
color	+	________	=	________
use	+	________	=	________

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to add the suffix "-ful" to the base word and write the new word.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يضيف اللاحقة "-ful" إلى الكلمة الأساسية ويكتب الكلمة الجديدة

(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Waleed lives in a city. ☐
2. Waleed lives with his grandparents. ☐
3. They use the Nile to water the seeds. ☐
4. They grow many fruits. ☐

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. grandparents – My – on – a farm – lived.

....

2. animals – brought – to – They – the – land.

....

3. is – a very – farm – special – It.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When there is no water in the land, it becomes ....
   a. wet   b. dry   c. good   d. fresh
2. They used rainwater to .... the seeds.
   a. water   b. sell   c. bring   d. make
3. He lives .... a farm.
   a. for   b. of   c. on   d. next
4. Forty years ago, the land .... dry.
   a. are   b. was   c. do   d. were

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

green – billion – rainwater – life

My grandparents had a farm. They grew many fruits. They used (1) .... to water the plants. They needed about a (2) .... liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land (3) ....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds.

They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to the land. Today, Adam lives on the farm with his grandparents. They're very happy and they have a good life. His grandparents are very proud of him. They use plants to make the land green.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They planted millions of ....
   a. seeds   b. flowers   c. farms   d. crops
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to Adam's ....
   a. friends   b. parents   c. grandparents   d. sisters

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did they use to water the seeds? ....
4. What did Adam's grandparents bring to the land? ....

6 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. My friend lives in	( ) a. of my parents.
2. I'm proud	( ) b. and vegetables.
3. They grow fruits	( ) c. the United States.
4. They have	( ) d. a good life.
	( ) e. make the land green.

7 Punctuate the following.

i live on a farm

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Life on a farm

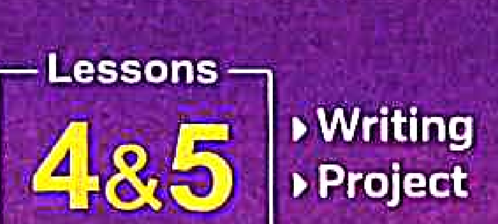
Guiding elements : plant - bring animals

....

....

....

....



- Writing
- Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

first أولاً	next التالي	after بعد
finally أخيراً	after that بعد ذلك	papyrus نبات البردي

Extra vocabulary

month شهر	life cycle دورة حياة	sandals صندل (حذاء صيفي)
sunflower زهرة عباد الشمس	week أسبوع	get taller يزداد طولاً
quickly بسرعة	sunlight ضوء الشمس	process عملية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
face	يواجه	faced
germinate	ينبت	germinated
drop	يسقط	dropped

Irregular

Present		Past
put	يضع	put
begin	يبدأ	began
get	يصبح	got

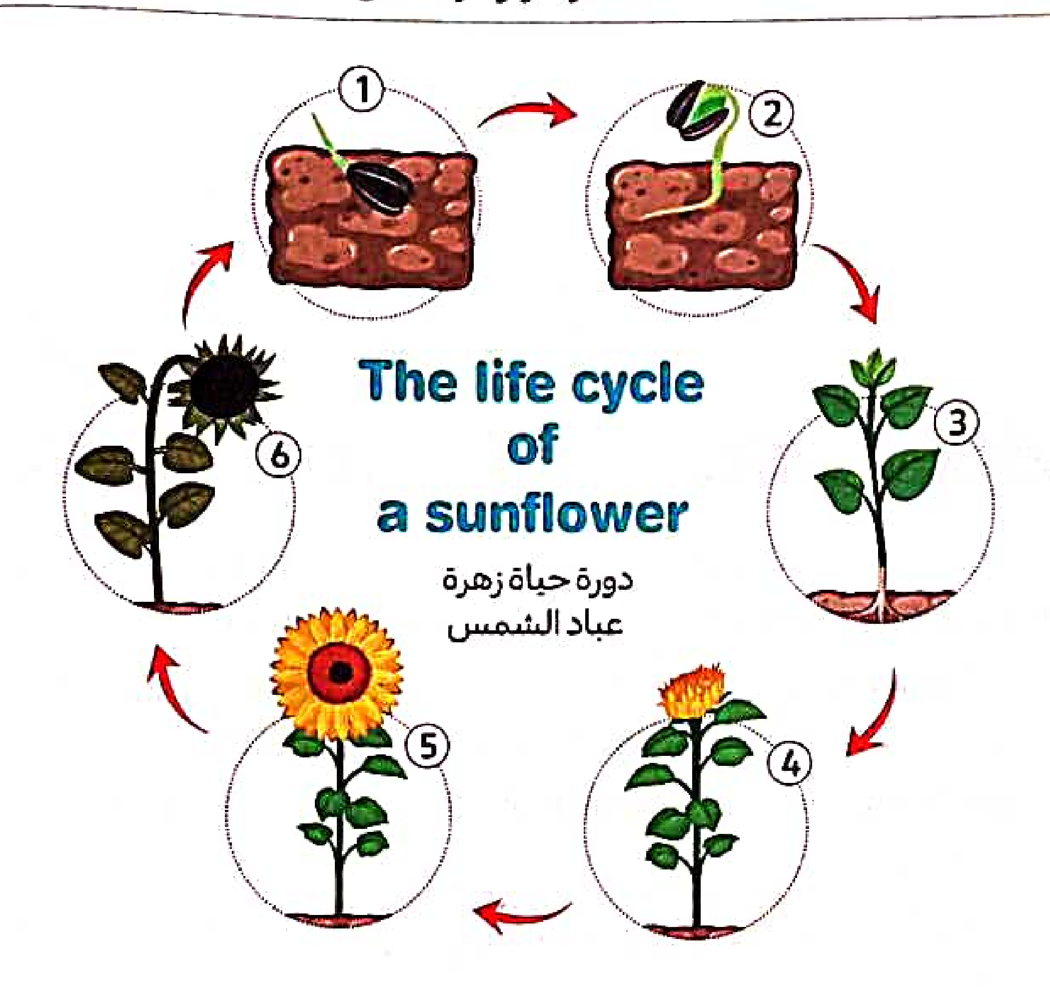
Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The life cycle of a sunflower	seed - soil	Plant the sunflower seed in soil, put it in sunlight and water it.
	germinate - roots	The seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
	shoot	The shoot grows above the soil and it grows leaves.
	faces - sun	The sunflower opens and faces the sun.
	dies - drops	The sunflower dies and drops its seeds.
Papyrus	special	Papyrus is a very special plant.
	paper	Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper.
	sandals	They made sandals and baskets from papyrus.
	warm weather	Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather.
	Nile Delta	Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

(_) (_)

II Writing

★ Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.



- First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it.

- أولاً، تزرع بذرة زهرة عباد الشمس في التربة. تضعها في ضوء الشمس وتسقيها بالماء.

- Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

- التالي، تنبت البذور وتبدأ بإنتاج الجذور تحت التربة.

- After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.

- بعد ذلك، البرعم ينمو أعلى التربة. تنتج أوراق الشجر. يصبح أطول.

- After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.

- بعد حوالي ٤ أشهر، تتفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.

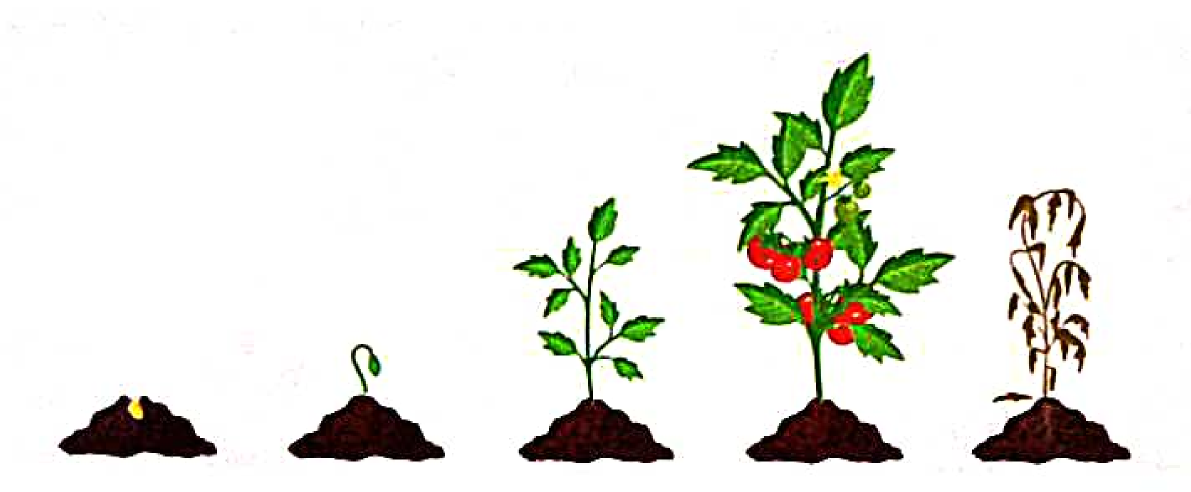
- Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

- في النهاية، تذبل زهرة عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها. تبدأ العملية مرة أخرى.



 **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

The life cycle of a tomato
دورة حياة الطماطم

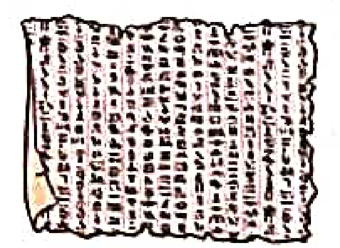


First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it.
Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows taller .
After a few weeks, the plant grows leaves, flowers, and tomatoes.
Finally, the tomato plant dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

Papyrus نبات البردى



Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

نبات البردى هو نبات مميز جدًا. وهو مشهور لأن المصريون القدماء استخدموا نبات البردى لصنع الورق. صنعوا أيضًا الصنادل والسلال من نبات البردى. نبات البردى يحتاج الكثير من المياه والجو الدافئ لينمو بسرعة. إنه ينمو في دلتا النيل بالقرب من النهر.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. .... is a very special plant.
   a. Paper b. Papyrus c. Sandals d. Soil
2. The sunflower opens and .... the sun.
   a. closes b. faces c. puts d. drops
3. The shoot starts to grow .... the soil.
   a. in b. behind c. above d. under
4. Papyrus needs a lot .... water to grow.
   a. off b. to c. up d. of

2 **Read and match (A) with (B).**

(A)	(B)
1. We plant the sunflower seed	☐ a. to make paper.
2. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus	☐ b. grow roots.
3. The shoot grows	☐ c. above the soil.
4. Papyrus grows in	☐ d. the Nile Delta.
	☐ e. in the soil.

3 **Reorder the words to make correct sentences.**

1. from – made – Ancient – sandals – Egyptians – papyrus.
   ....
2. the – need – does – plant – What – to grow ?
   ....
3. put – plants – sunlight – the – in – We.
   ....

4 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

roots - sun - After that - germinates

First , you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it. Next, the seed (1) .... and it starts to grow roots under the soil. (2) .... , the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 months, it opens and faces the (3) ....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing near the river. They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grows in the Nile Delta near the Nile River. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. The Ancient Egyptians also used the papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It is a very special plant.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about "......................".

a. Lotus b. Rose c. Papyrus d. Tomatoes

2. Ancient Egyptians made .... from papyrus.

a. sweets b. sandals c. doors d. windows

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does papyrus need to grow?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

why do plants need sunlight and water

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The life cycle of a tomato"

Guiding elements : seed – sunlight

....

....

....



Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى مفردة لغوية أو عبارة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل بعد قراءة النص يمكنك أن تخمن معنى الكلمة المشار إليها من خلال الجملة التى ذُكرت بها.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called **germination**. We water the plant every day and the roots grow **under** the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

شرح الحل تقرأ الفقرة جيدًا لتحديد معانى الكلمات المستهدفة
under تحت **germination** إنبات

1. The underlined word "**under**" is the opposite of ....

a. near b. (above) c. in d. between

2. Germination means to .... a seed and the plant grows.

a. buy b. sell c. eat d. (plant)

3. What is germination ?

- We plant a seed and the plant grows.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow **quickly**.

It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

1. The underlined word "**quickly**" means ....

a. fast b. slow c. short d. low

2. Papyrus is a/an ....

a. animal b. plant c. food d. fruit

3. What is papyrus ?

....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [نبات الطماطم] و[نبات البردى] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

▶ Write the meaning :

Tomato plant

- بذور ....
- بسقى / بروى ....
- جذور ....
- زهور ....
- لون أخضر ....
- بلكونة ....

Papyrus

- مميز ....
- ورق ....
- دافئ ....
- نهر ....
- بسرعة ....
- بنمو ....

Step 2 Sentences

▶ Complete the sentences :

Tomato plant

1. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
2. Tomatoes have .... inside.
3. We .... the plant every day.
4. The .... grow under the soil.

Papyrus

1. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the ....
2. Papyrus needs .... weather to grow quickly.
3. Papyrus is a very .... plant.
4. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....

Step 3 Topics

▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences :

Tomato plant

....

....

....

....

....

▶ Write an email using the sentences :

Papyrus

....

....

....

....

....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Plants and seeds

Tomatoes have seeds inside[1]. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes [2]! We plant a seed and water it every day[3]. The roots grow under the soil[4]. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits[5]. Tomatoes are green before they are red[6].

2 Different flowers

There are many different flowers such as sunflower, rose and daisy[7]. The sunflower is the biggest flower[8]. The rose lives longer than the daisy[9]. The sunflower is the heaviest flower[10]. The rose is taller than the daisy[11]. The sunflower is taller than the rose[12].

3 Different plant habitats

There are many plant habitats[13]. In agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat[14]. They plant bean plants and orange trees[15]. There are plants that grow near rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed[16]. They need a lot of water to grow[17]. In desert habitat, there is not much rain so the plants don't need a lot of water[18].

4 Papyrus

New Message

From : samar@gmail.com

To : hend@gmail.com

Subject : Papyrus

Dear Hend,

How are you? I'm happy to write this email to you. Papyrus is a very special plant[19]. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river[20]. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper[21]. They also used the papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets[22]. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly[23]. It is a very useful plant[24].

Yours,

Samar

( ) ( )

TEST YOUR SKILLS



Why do we grow plants ?



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

red - roots - water - seeds

Adel : Dad, why are our tomato plants green ?

Dad : Tomatoes are green before they are (1)..................... .

Adel : How do we grow tomatoes ?

Dad : We use the (2)..................... inside tomatoes to plant new tomatoes.

Adel : What should we do after that ?

Dad : We should (3)..................... the plant every day to grow tomato fruits.

My Language

2 Read and write the correct form of the word between brackets.

1. The kitchen is the..................... (hot) room in the house.
2. I think that roses are..................... (nice) flowers in the garden.
3. Monkeys are the..................... (cute) animals in the zoo.
4. She is..................... (fast) swimmer in the team.
5. English is..................... (difficult) subject at school.

My Writing

3 Punctuate the following.

which plants grow where you live

....

4 Write three sentences about tomato plants.

....

....

....

My Project

5 Make a poster about an Egyptian plant.

◯ قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



Review on Unit 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثالثة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

leaf	ورقة شجر
soil	تربة زراعية
roots	جذور
seeds	بذور
shoot	برعم / نبتة
bean plant	نبات الفول
lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
orange tree	شجرة برتقال
acacia	شجر السنط
rose	وردة
daisy	زهرة الأقحوان
tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء
reed	نبات القصب / الجريد
sunflower	زهرة عباد الشمس
habitat	موطن - بيئة

Phonics

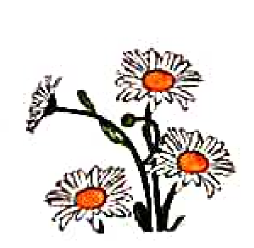
/sl/	/sw/
sleep	sweep
slice	switch
slippers	swan

Language

1 Comparative adjectives

short adj. + [er] + than

- A rose is taller than a daisy.





more + long adj. + than

- I think the daisy is more colorful than the rose.

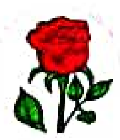
2 Superlative adjectives

the + short adj. + est

- My city is the nicest place to live in.

the most + long adj.

- I think a rose is the most beautiful flower.







Test 5 on Unit 3

نصوص الاستماع و التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. There are many plant habitats. ( )
2. Farmers grow food for us to eat. ( )
3. There are plants that grow near rivers and lakes. ( )
4. Lotus flower and reed grow in the desert. ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The .... land animal is the giraffe.
   a. tallest b. taller c. tall d. taller than
2. A daisy is taller .... a lotus flower.
   a. then b. than c. the d. there
3. There is not much rain in the .... habitat.
   a. agricultural b. desert c. river d. lake
4. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a. stems b. roots c. cells d. seeds

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

water - fruits - farmer - seeds

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the (1) .... and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and (2) .... it every day. The roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato (3) ....

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Papyrus grows	( ) a. the plant every day.
2. How do we grow	( ) b. under the soil.
3. We water	( ) c. a lot of water.
4. Plants near rivers need	( ) d. in the Nile Delta near the river.
	( ) e. new tomatoes?

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....
   a. rulers b. paper c. pencils d. food
2. Papyrus grows near the ....
   a. river b. desert c. farm d. forest

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why is papyrus famous ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the most – flower – What – beautiful – is ?

....

2. soil – under – grow – The roots – the.

....

3. a – scarier – cat – A fox – than – is.

....

7 Punctuate the following.

which plant is the tallest

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Agricultural habitat

Guiding elements :

- Where do farmers work ?
- Which plants grow in the agricultural habitat ?

....

....

....

....

(_) (_)

Test 6 on Unit 3

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. We put a seed in the soil. ☐
2. The seed needs sunlight and water to grow. ☐
3. The seed grows roots above the soil. ☐
4. The full plant grows leaves and flowers. (الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٣) ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We need good .... to grow good plants.
   a. seeds b. books c. bags d. pens
2. The sunflower is the .... flower.
   a. heavier b. heavy c. heaviest d. as heavy
3. The plant roots grow .... the soil. We can't see them well.
   a. under b. above c. in front of d. on
4. Papyrus is a very .... plant.
   a. special b. poor c. bad d. ugly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

water - seeds - green - roots

My friend Selim likes farms and plants. He likes the (1).................... color of the leaves. He likes to use the (2).................... to grow new plants. He waters the plants every day. The (3).................... grow under the soil. My friend becomes very happy when there is a flower. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The desert (الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. in the soil.
2. We plant a seed (المنيا - مطاى ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. beautiful than a daisy.
3. A rose is more (القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. to make paper.
4. Egyptians used papyrus (بني سويف - بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. is a plant.
	☐ e. is a habitat.

(_) (_)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Amal lives in a village **near** the river. Farmers grow many fruits and vegetables there for us to eat. They grow onions, tomatoes and rice. Farmers grow apples and oranges, too. There are a lot of plants near the river. Plants near the river need a lot of water.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined "**near**" is the opposite of ....
   a. far b. close c. behind d. about
2. Farmers need .... to grow plants and vegetables.
   a. food b. onions c. water d. villages

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where does Amal live ?

....

4. What do farmers grow ? [بورسعيد - شمال ٢٠٢٣]

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. under – Roots – the – grow – soil. [بني سويف - الفشن ٢٠٢٣]

....

2. need – Why – and sunlight – do – plants – water ? [الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣]

....

3. seeds – have – Tomatoes – inside. [الاسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Punctuate the following.

papyrus is an Egyptian plant [البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣]

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

The life cycle of a sunflower

Guiding elements : soil - seed

....

....

....

....

[القاهرة - عين شمس ٢٠٢٣]





نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

A. Listening

▶ **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

1. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make .... (paper – glass – wood)
2. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the .... (desert – sea – river)

B. Language Functions

▶ **Read and complete the dialogue.**

plants – agricultural – bean

Reem : In which habitat do you live ?
Nada : I live in an (1) .... habitat.
Reem : Which (2) .... grow in it ?
Nada : There are (3) .... plants and orange trees.

▶ **Rearrange the following.**

1. grow – a lot – Farmers – food – of.
....
2. need - grow – Plants – water – to.
....
3. seeds – have – Tomatoes – inside.
....
4. do – Where – you – live ?
....

C. Vocabulary and structures

▶ **Choose the correct answer.**

1. A snake is the .... animal.
   a. scarier b. scariest c. scary
2. The sunflower dies and drops its ....
   a. roots b. seeds c. soil
3. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a. flowers b. seeds c. reeds
4. Farmers grow .... like oranges and lemons.
   a. fruits b. colors c. subjects
5. She is the .... girl in the class.
   a. good b. better c. best

(_) (_)

GENERAL REVISION on Units 1,2 & 3

I Vocabulary

Unit 1

bananas	موز	potatoes	بطاطس	special	خاص / مميز
chickens	دجاج	onions	بصل	raise	يربي
grapes	عنب	tomatoes	طماطم	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
rice	أرز	vegetables	خضروات	milkshake	لبن مخفوق
milk	حليب	breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	emperor	إمبراطور
watermelons	بطيخ	lunch	وجبة الغداء	palace	قصر
sugarcane	قصب السكر	dinner	وجبة العشاء	king	ملك

Unit 2

spider	عنكبوت	beak	منقار	flat feet	أقدام مسطحة
fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك	bear	دب	strong	قوي
camel	جمل	dangerous	خطر	amazing	رائع
crocodile	تمساح	rhim gazelle	غزال الريم	perfect	مثالي
snake	ثعبان	horse	حصان	noisy	مزعج
fur	فراء	pelican	بجعة	hump	سنام

Unit 3

soil	تربة زراعية	daisy	زهرة الأقحوان	rose	وردة
shoot	برعم	sunflower	زهرة عباد الشمس	bean plant	نبات الفول
roots	جذور	desert	صحراء	habitat	موطن
leaf	ورقة شجر	balcony	شرفة	beetle	خنفساء
seeds	بذور	tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء	agricultural	زراعي
flower	زهرة	reed	نبات القصب / الجريد	river	نهر
acacia	شجرة السنط	lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس	lake	بحيرة

II Language

Unit 1

Conjunctions (but & and) / The prefix "re–"

- "but" to show contrast. - للتعبير عن التناقض
- I love playing video games, but I only play them on Saturdays.

- "and" to add two ideas together. - لربط فكرتين
- I play football and basketball.

- The prefix "re" = again
- I repainted my room.

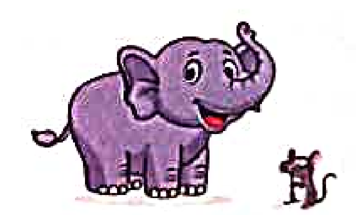
Unit 2

Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين [شخصين / شيئين]

A. Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

[adj. صفة + er] + than

 A mouse is smaller than an elephant.



B. Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

more + long adj. [صفة طويلة] + than............

 Crocodiles are more dangerous than fish.



Unit 3

Superlative صيغة التفضيل

A. Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

the + short adj. + est

Cheetah is the fastest animal.

B. Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

the most + long adj.

 The lion is the most dangerous animal.

General Exercises on Units 1,2 & 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

◂ السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. The crocodiles are small. ( )
2. Crocodiles are scary. ( )
3. Spiders are very helpful. ( )
4. Spiders eat insects. ( )

◂ السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

A. 1. I speak English .... French.
 a. but b. and c. or d. so
2. The crocodile is .... than the snake.
 a. big b. biggest c. bigger d. the biggest
3. .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.
 a. Farmers b. Engineers c. Fishermen d. Doctors
4. .... grow under the soil.
 a. Leaves b. Roots c. Flowers d. Shoots

B. 1. I love burgers, ... I only eat one a week.
 a. and b. so c. or d. but
2. The elephant is the .... animal.
 a. fat b. fatter c. fattest d. more fatter
3. There is no much rain in the ....
 a. desert b. river c. lake d. sea
4. Chicken and fruits are ....
 a. unhealthy b. bad c. healthy d. ugly

◂ السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

seed – shoot – sunlight – leaves

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs (1) .... and water so it can grow. The (2) .... grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows (3) .... and flowers.

◂ السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان.

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The fennec fox	( ) a. chickens.
2. A rose is taller	( ) b. flat feet.
3. Camels have large,	( ) c. lives in the desert.
4. Egyptian farmers raise	( ) d. tallest animal.
	( ) e. than a daisy.

◂ السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. They can live without water for a long time. Camels have special ways to close their nose and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. They have large, flat feet to walk on the sand.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The word " .... " is the opposite of the word "weak".
   a. useless b. helpful c. hungry d. strong
2. This text is about ....
   a. crocodiles b. bears c. spiders d. camels

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is special about camels?
....
4. How can camels walk on the sand?
....

◂ السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. biggest – The – sunflower – is – the.
....
2. A rose – beautiful – most – flower – the – is.
....
3. grow – We – in – tomatoes – Egypt.
....

◂ السؤال السابع في ورقة الامتحان.

7 Punctuate the following.

the bear is a big animal
....

◂ السؤال الثامن في ورقة الامتحان.

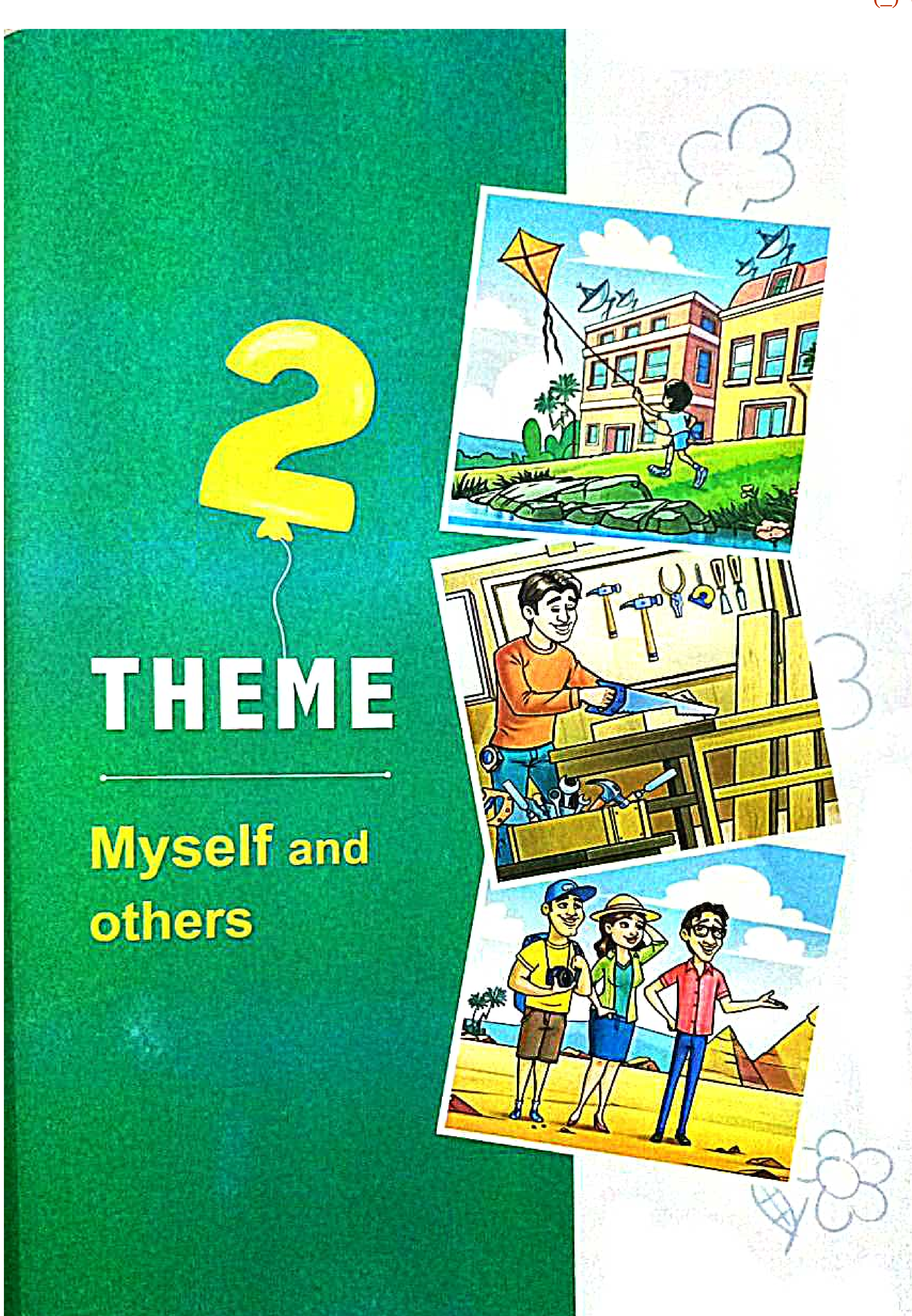
8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Rhim gazelles

Guiding elements: • Where do they live? • What do they look like?

....
....
....


2
THEME
Myself and others



Unit 4 Where do you live ?

أين تعيش ؟

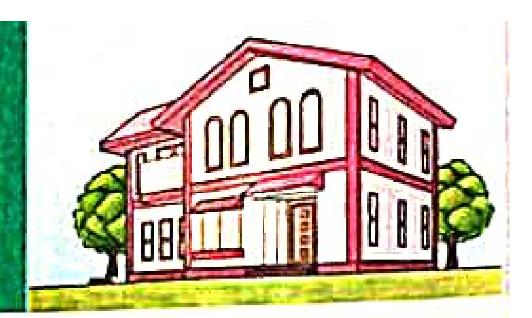
Aims of Unit Four : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.
  - استمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن مختلف المنازل والأماكن في مدينة.
- practice making sentences with prepositions.
  - أتدرب على تكوين الجمل باستخدام حروف الجر.
- read and listen to a short story.
  - أقرأ وأستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/.
  - أتعلم عن وأقول كلمات بأصوات /f/ و /v/.
- write a short article about your village or city.
  - اكتب مقال قصير عن قريتك أو عائلتك.
- research and make a poster.
  - أبحث واصنع ملصق.



Lesson 1 ▸ At Home



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


balcony
شرفة (بلكونة)


bathroom
دورة مياه


kitchen
مطبخ


living room
حجرة معيشة


At home في المنزل


bedroom
حجرة نوم


dining room
حجرة الطعام

Types of houses أنواع المنازل


apartment
شقة سكنية


houseboat
منزل عائم


house
منزل


tent
خيمة

Extra vocabulary

lovely	جميل / محبوب	street	شارع	cloth	قماش
quietly	بهدوء	unusual	غير عادى / استثنائى	whole	كل

Did you know ? Canada has some very unusual houses. Some houses look like a cube. Other houses are made of ice
هل تعلم ؟ كندا لديها منازل غير عادية جدا. البعض منها تشبه المكعب والبعض الآخر مصنوع من الثلج

(_) (_)

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
relax	يسترخى	relaxed	sit	يجلس	sat
organize	ينظم	organized	do	يفعل / يؤدى	did

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- for me بالنسبة لى
- That sounds good ! هذا يبدو جيدًا !
- take a shower يأخذ دش
- move to ينتقل إلى
- [be] made of cloth مصنوع من القماش
- live on a houseboat يعيش فى منزل عائم
- Let's do it ! هيا نفعلها !

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My home	apartment	I live in an apartment.
	bedroom	I like my bedroom.
	relax	I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom.
	living room	My favorite room is the living room with the balcony.
	balcony	I can see the whole street from the balcony.
Different houses	houseboat - water	We live on a houseboat on water.
	desert - tent	In the desert, we live in a tent.
	house - rooms	I live in a house that has many rooms.

05 **Pop Quiz on Vocabulary**

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We cook food in the ....
   a. bedroom b. bathroom c. living room d. kitchen
2. We eat food in the ....
   a. living room b. dining room c. bathroom d. balcony
3. I live with my family in a big ....
   a. apartment b. school c. office d. hospital

2 Look, read and complete.

1 I cook food in the ....



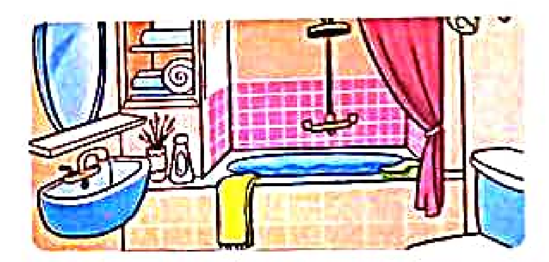
2 I sleep here in the ....



3 I talk to my family and watch television in the ....



4 I take a shower in the ....



5 I love to sit in the ....
I can see the people in the street.



6 I eat dinner with my family in the ....





II Listening and Reading



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Where are Mom and Talia ? اين توجد الام وتاليا ؟





Look at our **lovely** new apartment !

انظري إلى شقتنا الجديدة الجميلة !



It's **fantastic** ! إنها رائعة !

Which is your favorite room ?

أي غرفة مفضلة لديك ؟



For me it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly.

بالنسبة لي غرفة نومي. يمكنني الاسترخاء وأداء واجبي المنزلي بهدوء.



My favorite is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street ! Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen ?

المفضل لي هي غرفة المعيشة مع الشرفة. يمكنني أن أرى الشارع بأكمله !

هل يمكنك مساعدتي في تنظيم المطبخ يا تاليا ؟



That sounds good, let's do it! هذا يبدو جيدًا، فلنفعل ذلك !

Determine the meaning of words.

حدد معنى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The word "fantastic" means ....

a. amazing b. bad c. heavy d. boring

Practice 2. The word "lovely" means ....

a. bad b. beautiful c. ugly d. sad

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

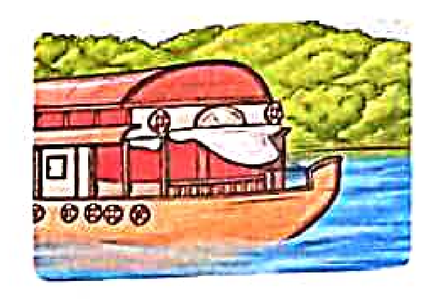
1 My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.

انتقلت عمتي/خالتي إلى شقة جديدة مع عائلتها. إنهم سعداء جدًا لأن لديهم شرفة كبيرة.



2 My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water.

صديقتي وعائلتها يعيشون في منزل عائم. إنه صغير، لكنها تحب العيش على الماء.



3 In the desert, some people live in a tent. This home is made of cloth.

في الصحراء، يسكن بعض الناس في خيمة. هذا المنزل مصنوع من القماش.



4 I love living in a house because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

أحب العيش في منزل لأنه مبنى كبير. أجدادي يعيشون معنا. يمكنني اللعب في الخارج مع أخي وأختي.



III Language functions

▸ Describing your home وصف المنزل الخاص بك



"Where do you live ?" أين تعيش؟

- I live in an apartment.
- My favorite room is the living room.
- I play games with my brother in the living room.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

street - eat - balcony - outside

I love my house. It is big. My grandparents live with us. I can play (1) .... with my brother and sister in our garden. My favorite room is the living room with the (2) .... I can see the whole (3) ....

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - What - favorite - your - room?

....

2. dinner - my family - eat - I - with.

....

3. relax - bedroom - I - in - can - the.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My friend loves to live .... water. He lives on a houseboat.
   a. off   b. in   c. on   d. next
2. I have a big balcony in my new ....
   a. street   b. apartment   c. tent   d. nest
3. The tent is made of ....
   a. cloth   b. wood   c. glass   d. grass
4. There .... three bedrooms in my apartment.
   a. is   b. are   c. has   d. does

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello! My name is Hamza. I want to tell you about myself. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. It's lovely with the balcony. I can see the whole street. I play games with my brother in the living room. I help my mother in the kitchen. I play football on Friday with my friend.

(_) (_)

١. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "lovely" means ....

a. bad b. ugly c. beautiful d. heavy

2. Hamza plays games with his ....

a. brother b. sister c. cousin d. friend

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What's Hamza's favorite room? ....

4. When does Hamza play football? ....

5 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. People in the desert	☐ a. an apartment.
2. I love living in	☐ b. in the dining room.
3. My favorite room	☐ c. made of cloth.
4. I eat dinner	☐ d. live in a tent.
	☐ e. is the living room.

6 Punctuate the following.

what's your favorite room

....

7 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

Your home

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements: apartment - balcony

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2



- Where is it ?
- Language Focus



I Vocabulary



Key vocabulary



Extra vocabulary

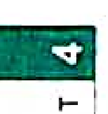
couch أريكة / كنبة	map خريطة	museum متحف	sick مريض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Present		Regular Past	Irregular Present		Irregular Past
live	يعيش	lived	send	يرسل	sent
work	يعمل	worked	buy	يشترى	bought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- live in a village يعيش فى قرية
- next to the Nile بجوار نهر النيل



Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A village	live - village	I live in a village near the Nile.
	house - family	I live in a house with my family.
	trees	There are tall trees next to my house.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

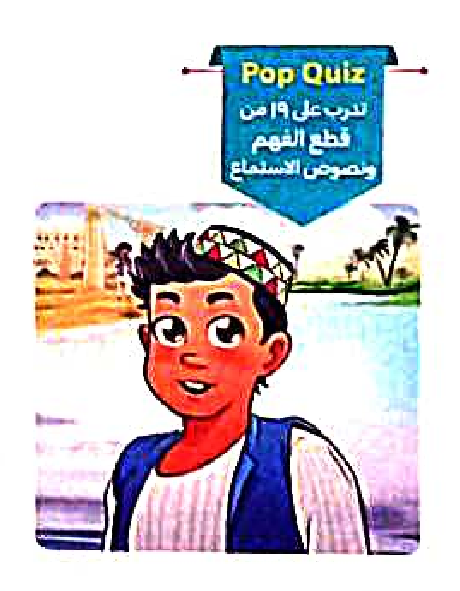
▶ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I buy chips from the ....
   a. post office   b. supermarket   c. hospital   d. office
2. I learn math at ....
   a. school   b. office   c. hospital   d. post office
3. I am in the .... because I hurt my leg.
   a. village   b. school   c. supermarket   d. hospital



Listen, read and learn. استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



My name's Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile.
I live in a house with my family.
Our house is not the biggest in the village.
It is between a yellow house and a brown house.
There are tall trees behind the house.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details. وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn 1. Zain lives in a / an .... next to the Nile.
   a. city   b. town   c. village   d. oasis

Practice 2. Zain lives with his ....
   a. family   b. friends   c. cousins   d. aunts

اسمي زين. أعيش في قرية بجوار النيل. أعيش في منزل مع عائلتي. منزلنا ليس الأكبر في القرية. إنه بين منزل أصفر اللون ومنزل بني اللون. يوجد أشجار طويلة خلف المنزل.

II Language Focus

1 Prepositions of place. ١. حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.

▸ We use prepositions of place to say where something is.

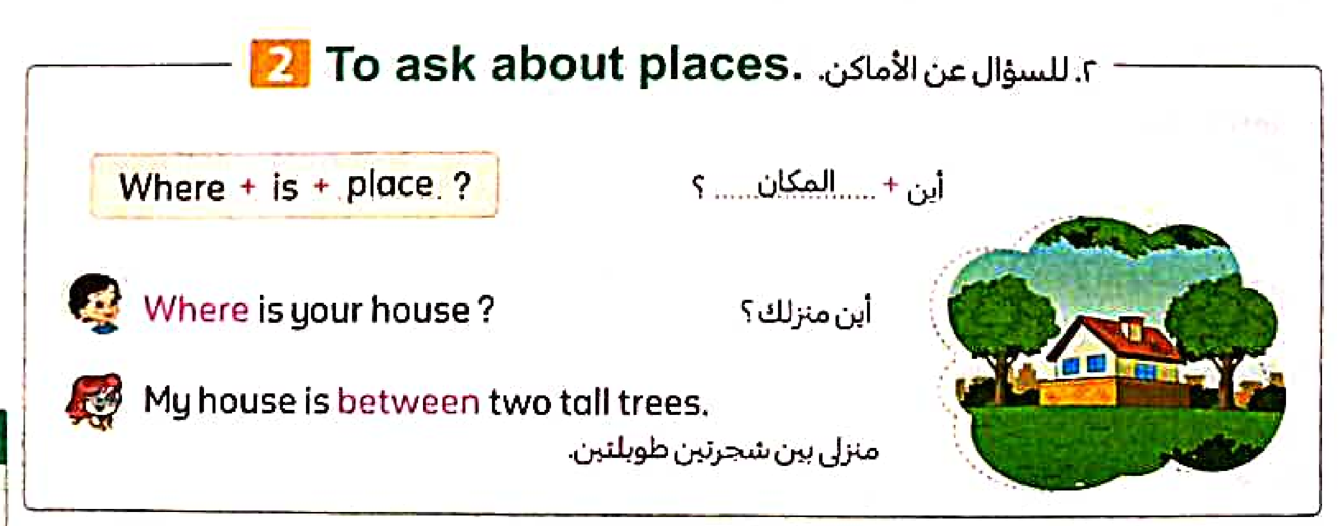
- نحن نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنذكر مكان شئ ما.

Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

- in front of أمام
- on على
- behind خلف
- in فى
- between بين
- under تحت
- next to بجانب
- above أعلى

2 To ask about places. ٢. للسؤال عن الأماكن.



Where + is + place ?

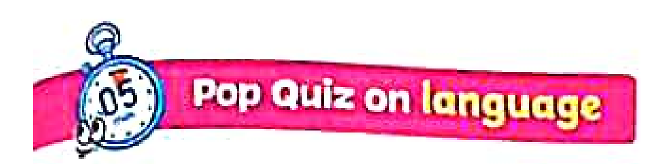
أين + ...المكان...... ؟

Where is your house ?

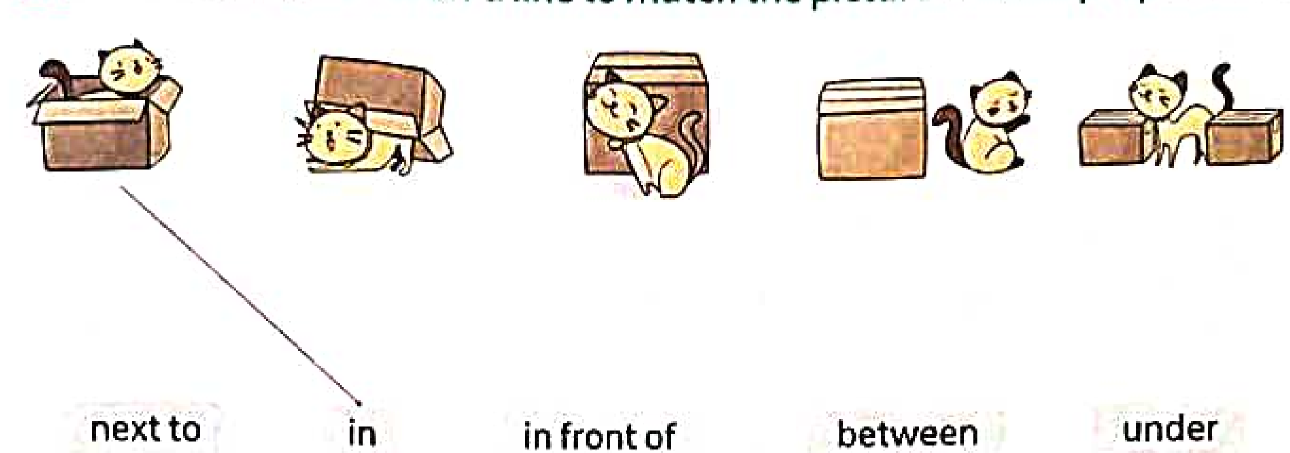
أين منزلك ؟

My house is between two tall trees.

منزلى بين شجرتين طويلتين.



1 Where's the cat ? Draw a line to match the picture with its preposition.



next to   in   in front of   between   under

2 Look, read and answer.



Where's the car ?

....



Where is the armchair ?

....



Where is the girl ?

....

3 Read and circle the correct preposition.

1. The kids are playing .... the park.
   a. above   b. in   c. next   d. under
2. The tent is .... of the car.
   a. above   b. in   c. in front   d. under
3. The trees are .... the apartments.
   a. under   b. next   c. in front of   d. on
4. I like sitting .... the couch.
   a. in front   b. next   c. in   d. on
5. The shopping mall is .... the supermarket and the bank.
   a. between   b. under   c. above   d. on

( ) ( )

Read and identify. اقرأ و تعرف.



1 The supermarket :

is a place where we buy food.

المتجر (السوبر ماركت) هو المكان الذى نشترى منه الطعام.



2 The post office :

is a place where we send letters.

مكتب البريد هو المكان الذى نرسل عبره الخطابات.



3 The school :

is a place where I learn.

المدرسة هى المكان الذى أتعلم فيه.



4 The shopping mall :

is a place where I buy clothes and shoes.

مركز التسوق هو المكان الذى أشترى منه الملابس والأحذية.



5 The office :

is a place where my mom and dad work.

المكتب هو المكان الذى يعمل فيه أمى وأبى.



6 The hospital :

is a place where we go when we are sick.

المستشفى هى المكان الذى نذهب إليه عندما نكون مرضى.

(__) (__)

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. There are two beds in my bedroom. ☐
2. There are three chairs and a cupboard. ☐
3. The table is between the two chairs. ☐
4. The book is on the table. ☐

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)		(B)
1. Ali lives in	☐	a. of the post office.
2. The school is a place	☐	b. where we send letters.
3. The supermarket is in front	☐	c. the shopping mall and the office.
4. The hospital is between	☐	d. a village next to the Nile.
	☐	e. where we learn.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. live – village – I – in – a small.

....

2. office – next – is – to – The school – the post.

....

3. tall – the house – There're – trees – behind.

....

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

clothes – between – shopping mall – next

My name's Hana. I live in Cairo. There is a (1) .... in my street. I buy (2) .... and shoes from that shopping mall. It's (3) .... to my school where I learn.

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The cat is .... the bed and the table.
   a. between b. next c. in d. on

(_) (_)

2. The supermarket is next .... the school.

a. of b. on c. in d. to

3. The .... is a place where we send letters.

a. post office b. office c. school d. hospital

4. He was sick so he went to ....

a. office b. school c. hospital d. supermarket

6 Read the text and answer the questions.

I am Zeyad. I'm very happy because today I will visit my uncle. My uncle lives in a village next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. The house is between a green house and a yellow house.

The village isn't big, but there are a lot of different places in it; a school, a hospital, a post office and a supermarket.

The children in the village can learn in the school. When people get sick, they can go to the hospitals. People in the village buy their food from the supermarket. My cousins love their village because it's very quiet and there aren't a lot of cars there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. A/An .... is the place where we buy our food.

a. hospital b. school c. supermarket d. office

2. Zeyad's uncle lives in a ....

a. tent b. Nile c. village d. city

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do the cousins love their village ?

....

4. Where can people go when they get sick ?

....

7 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

Your village

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What places are there in your village ?
- Do you live in an apartment or a house ?

....

....

....

....

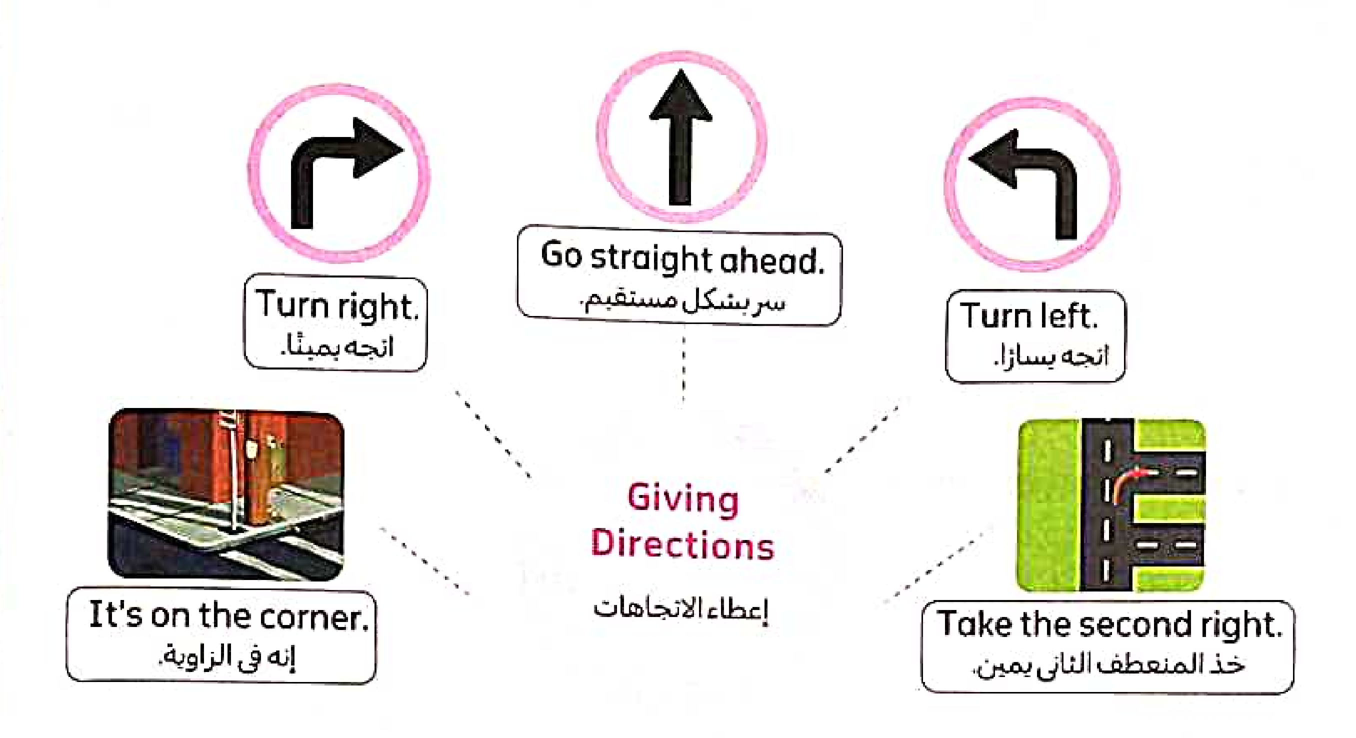
....



Giving directions



I Vocabulary



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
turn	يتجه	turned	come	يأتي	came
			go	يذهب	went

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• near my house	بالقرب من منزل	• come to ...	يأتي لـ ....
• on the other side	على الجانب الآخر	• See you soon !	أراك قريباً !
• Excuse me !	معذرة !	• Thank you !	شكرًا لك!

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



Excuse me, where's the post office?

معذرة، أين مكتب البريد؟



Go straight ahead. Turn right. Take the second left. It's on the corner.

سر بشكل مستقيم. اتجه يمينًا. خذ المنعطف الثاني يسارًا. إنه عند الزاوية.



Thank you!

شكرًا لك!

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

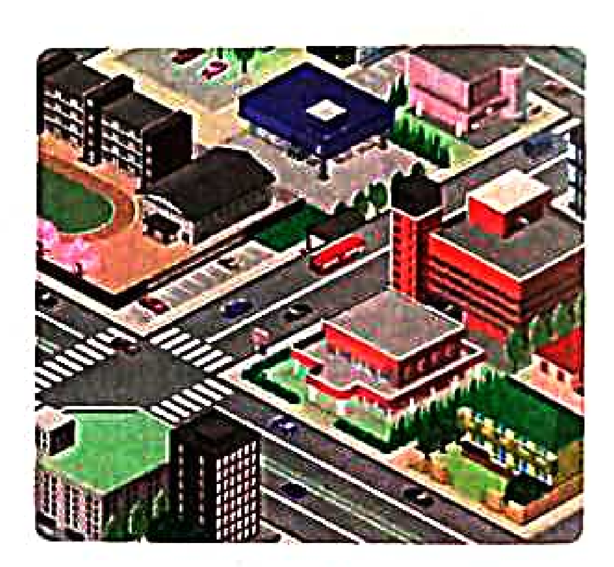
Dina is going to visit her friend Fareeda.

Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions[1]. From the corner[2] of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right[3] to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket[4]. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon!

Fareeda



[1] اتجاهات
[2] زاوية
[3] المنعطف الثاني
[4] متجر

- مرحبًا دينا! أنا سعيدة جدًا لأنك ستأتي إلى منزلي اليوم. إليك بعض الاتجاهات. انطلقي إلى الأمام مباشرة من زاوية الشارع الجنوبي مع شارع لطيف. اتخذي المنعطف الثاني إلى شارع عبد الوهاب. أذهبي إلى الأمام مباشرة. انعطفي يسارًا عند السوبر ماركت. منزلي بين السوبر ماركت والمدرسة.
أراك قريبًا!
فريدة



General Exercises on Lesson 3 PART 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Reem lives in a small village. ☐
2. Her school is next to the park. ☐
3. Reem often plays basketball in the park. ☐
4. Reem plays in the park with her friends. ☐

2 Read and match [A] with [B].

[A]	[B]
1. Where's the post office ?	☐ a. near my house.
2. There's a park	☐ b. the hospital and the school.
3. My house is between	☐ c. thank you !
4. Go straight	☐ d. ahead.
	☐ e. The post office is on the corner.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

corner – where – straight – directions

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some (1) .... From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go (2) .... ahead. Take the second right. My house is on the (3) ....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the hospital – to – next – My – school – is.

....

2. is - on – The supermarket – corner – the.

....

3. post – the – office – is – Where –, please ?

....

(_) (_)

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. .... right. The park is on the left.
   a. Turn b. Take c. Talk d. Learn
2. The hospital is .... the corner.
   a. of b. front c. on d. under
3. My school is next .... the station.
   a. to b. of c. on d. in
4. I play football in the ....
   a. hospital b. post office c. park d. supermarket

6 Punctuate the following.

excuse me, where's the supermarket

....

7 Write an email of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words to your friend Ali to tell him about the directions to your house.

Your name is Hany and your email address is hany@school.com.

Your friend's email address is ali@school.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : Go straight - corner

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

....

....

....

....

....

....



- Story : Living on a boat
- Pronunciation



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

tourist boat قارب سياحى	summer فصل الصيف

Extra vocabulary

suddenly فجأة	Chinese اللغة الصينية	interesting شيق	child طفل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Present		Regular Past	Irregular Present		Irregular Past
smile	يبتسم	smiled	fall	يسقط	fell
shout	يصيح - يصرخ	shouted	meet	يقابل	met
save	ينقذ	saved	speak	يتحدث	spoke
decide	يقرر	decided	swim	يسبح	swam

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- work on tourist boats
  يعمل على القوارب السياحية
- travel up and down the Nile
  ينتقل في نهر النيل ذهابًا وإيابًا
- from all over the world
  من كل أنحاء العالم
- fell into the river
  سقط في النهر

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Living on a boat	boat - live	Sherif lives on a boat.
	summer - like	He likes summer very much.
	people - meet	He meets people from all over the world.
	child - river	A small child fell into the river.
	Sherif's dad - save	Sherif's dad saved the child.
	learn - swim	Sherif decided to learn to swim.

II Listening and Reading



Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم وبصوص الاستماع

How did Sherif's dad help the small child ?

The beginning

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the **summer**[1]. His parents work on **tourist boats**[2] so he goes with them. They **travel**[3] up and down the **Nile**[4].



He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world.
He **speaks**[5] English and Chinese with the tourists.

The middle

One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. **Suddenly**[6] a small child fell into the river! The child **shouted**[7] 'Please help me !'
Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child ! The child smiled and said, 'Thank you so much!'

The end

Sherif was very happy, but he also **decided**[8] to learn to swim.

[1] فصل الصيف
[2] قوارب سياحية
[3] يسافر
[4] نهر النيل
[5] يتحدث
[6] فجأة
[7] صاح / صرخ
[8] قرر

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
حدد فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. Sherif lives on a .... in the summer.
a. ferry b. canoe c. boat d. ship

Practice 2. Sherif speaks English and Chinese with the ....
a. family b. tourists c. friends d. teachers

يعيش صديقي شريف على قارب في فصل الصيف. يعمل والديه على متن قوارب سياحية لذلك يذهب معهم. يسافرون ذهابًا وإيابًا في نهر النيل. هو يحب الصيف كثيرًا. يرى الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة ويلتقي بأشخاص من جميع أنحاء العالم. هو يتحدث الإنجليزية والصينية مع السياح.
ذات يوم توقف القارب. ورأى شريف بعض الأطفال تلعب، وفجأة سقط طفل صغير في النهر! الطفل صرخ "رجاءً ساعدوني!" نادى شريف والده. رأى والد شريف الطفل وقفز في النهر. سبح وأنقذ الطفل ! ابتسم الطفل وقال "شكراً جزيلاً!"
كان شريف سعيدًا جدًا. لكنه قرر أيضًا تعلم السباحة.



III Pronunciation





1 The letter "f" makes the / f / sound. [Voiceless]



foot قدم

face وجه

fan مروحة

fish سمكة

Pronunciation tips :

1. Touch your neck with your finger.
2. Say "fish". Your neck doesn't move.

- نصائح عند النطق :

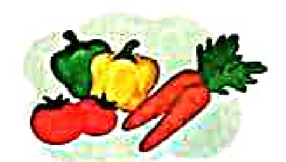
١. المس رقبتك بأصابعك.

٢. قل "fish". رقبتك لا تتحرك [حنجرتك لا تهتز].

2 The letter "v" makes the / v / sound. [Voiced]



van
شاحنة صغيرة

living room
حجرة معيشة

vegetables
خضروات

Pronunciation tips :

1. Touch your neck with your finger.
2. Say "van". Your neck vibrates during its pronunciation.

- نصائح عند النطق :

١. المس رقبتك بأصبعك.

٢. انطق "van" سوف تهتز رقبتك [حنجرتك] أثناء النطق.





Pop Quiz on phonics

1 Look and write the missing sound.

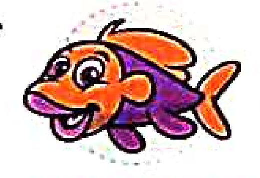
1. 
li _ ing room

2. 
_ oot

3. 
_ egetables

2 Look, unscramble and write.

1. 
n v a
....

2. 
h s f i
....

3. 
c f a e
....

4. 
n a f
....

3 Look and circle the picture with /f/ sound in green and the picture with /v/ sound in red.













(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lesson 3 PART 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My friend lives .... a boat in the summer.

   a. under b. front c. on d. between

2. My favorite room is the ....

   a. van b. living room c. face d. boat

3. In summer, we travel .... and down the Nile.

   a. in b. at c. so d. up

4. The man swam and .... the child.

   a. decided b. saved c. jumped d. smiled

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. places – interesting – sees – many – He .

   ....

2. saved – child – My dad – the.

   ....

3. decided – learn – He – to swim – to.

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

meets – tourists – stores – travels

Ahmed likes the summer very much. His parents work on tourist boats. He (1).......................... up and down the Nile with them. He sees many interesting places. He (2).......................... people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the (3).......................... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Omar works on tourist boats in summer with his father. One day, the boat stopped and Omar saw some children playing. Suddenly, a small child fell into the river. The child shouted, "Please, help me !" Omar called his dad. Omar's

dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child. The child smiled and said, "Thank you so much !"

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Omar's dad can .... so he saved the child.
   a. read   b. swim   c. jump   d. run
2. The children were ....
   a. swimming   b. sleeping   c. playing   d. eating

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Omar see ?

....

4. What happened to the small child ?

....

5 Read and match [A] with [B].

[A]

1. I meet people from
2. Hany's dad works on
3. He travels up
4. How did he

[B]

- ☐ a. a tourist boat.
- ☐ b. all over the world.
- ☐ c. help the small child ?
- ☐ d. in the summer.
- ☐ e. and down the river.

6 Punctuate the following.

they travel up and down the Nile

....

7 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR [24] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Living on a boat

Guiding elements : summer - travel

....

....

....

....

Lessons 4&5

- Writing
- Project



I Vocabulary



Key vocabulary

the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة	safaris	رحلات سفارى
Sahl Hasheesh	سهل حشيش (في الغردقة)	bazaar	بازار (سوق تجارى)	bold	خط عريض

Extra vocabulary

photos	صور فوتوغرافية	map	خريطة	fact	حقيقة
tourist	سائح	diagram	رسم بيانى	drawings	رسومات
worker	عامل	every week	كل أسبوع	kind	طيب / عطوف
near	بالقرب من	check	يفحص / يتحقق	fresh	طازج

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• in the east of Egypt	في شرق مصر	• on the map	على الخريطة
• on the Red Sea	على ساحل البحر الأحمر	• go on safaris	يذهب لرحلات سفارى

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Hurghada	the Red Sea	Hurghada is on the Red Sea.
	beach - interesting	There is a beach and interesting things to do.
	tourists - safaris	Tourists can go on safaris.
	houses - bazaars	It has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.
A supermarket worker	supermarket	Mona works at the supermarket.
	checks - food	She checks the food is fresh.
	helps - find	She helps us when we can't find something.
	kind - happy	She is very kind and happy.

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Hurghada-My town[1]


Mariam

Hi, I'm Mariam. I **live**[2] in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here.

In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of **interesting**[3] things to do. There is the **Sahara Desert**[4] where lots of **tourists**[5] go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting **bazaars**[6].

[1] مدينة صغيرة
[2] يعيش
[3] شيق
[4] الصحراء الكبرى
[5] سائحين
[6] أسواق تجارية (بازارات)


Hurghada beach


Sahl Hasheesh, Egypt


Sahara Desert

مرحبًا، أنا مريم. أعيش فى مدينة تسمى الغردقة. تقع الغردقة فى شرق مصر على البحر الأحمر. وهى مدينة كبيرة يعيش بها حوالى ١٩٠ ألف شخص. يوجد بها شاطئ و الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التى يمكنك القيام بها. هناك الصحراء الكبرى حيث يذهب الكثير من السائحين فى رحلات السفارى. لدينا سهل حشيش فى جنوب الغردقة الذى يوجد به بعض المنازل الجميلة والبازارات المثيرة للاهتمام.



Pop Quiz on Reading

Read the text again and complete.

City	Hurghada
Where is it ?	in the .... of Egypt
How many people live there ?	about .... people
Interesting things in Hurghada	beach, some beautiful ...., Sahl Hasheesh, ...

III Writing Skill

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

How to make your text interesting. كيفية جعل النص الخاص بك شيقًا.

Use استخدم

1. a photo of you صورة شخصية لك
2. photos صور
3. a map خريطة
4. interesting facts حقائق ممتعة
5. a diagram رسم بيانى

Eastern Africa

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The people who help us : the supermarket worker
الأشخاص الذين يساعدوننا : عامل السوبر ماركت

This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food.
Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very <u>kind</u> and happy.



Determine the meaning of words.
حدد معانى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The phrase "fresh food" means ....
a. new food b. old food c. original food d. bad food

Practice 2. The underlined word "kind" means ....
a. strong b. tired c. nice d. weak

هذه منى. تعمل فى المتجر القريب من منزلى. أراها أنا وعائلتى كل أسبوع عندما نشترى الطعام. منى تتحقق من أن الطعام طازج.
هى تساعدنا عندما لا يمكننا العثور على شىء ما. هى لطيفة جدا وسعيدة.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Reham lives in Hurghada. ☐
2. There are some beautiful houses and bazaars in Hurghada. ☐
3. There are pyramids in Hurghada. ☐
4. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert. ☐

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. You can go on	☐ a. the east of Egypt.
2. Hurghada is in	☐ b. the food is fresh.
3. The supermarket worker checks	☐ c. see her every week.
4. Supermarket workers help us	☐ d. when we can't find something.
	☐ e. safaris in the Sahara Desert.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. go – of – Lots – safaris – tourists – on.

....

2. in – live – How – people – many – Hurghada ?

....

3. the east – Hurghada – in – Egypt – is – of.

....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Mariam lives in a ....

a. city b. desert c. village d. countryside

2. Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt.

a. north b. south c. east d. west

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many people live in Hurghada ?

....

4. Where is Sahl Hasheesh ?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I bought a nice present for my mom from a .... in Hurghada.

a. school b. hospital c. post office d. bazaar

2. You can go on .... in the Sahara Desert.

a. running b. diving c. swimming d. safaris

3. .... lives in Hurghada ? – Mariam.

a. What b. Who c. Does d. When

4. .... Ghada live in Hurghada ?

a. Do b. Does c. Have d. Are

6 Punctuate the following.

i live in a city

....

7 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR [24] words using the following guiding elements.

Hurghada

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : beach – Sahl Hasheesh

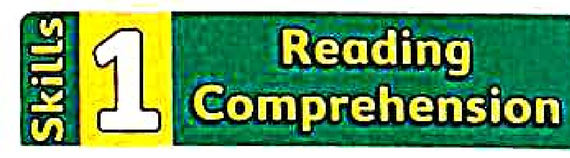
....

....

....

....

....



Demonstrate understanding of specific details



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى فهم تفاصيل محددة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا وتكون الإجابة موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada.

شرح الحل تقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا وتستخرج الإجابة مباشرة من النص.

1. Mariam lives in a ....
   a. village b. desert c. (city) d. town
2. Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt on the Red Sea.
   a. south b. west c. (east) d. north
3. Tourists go on .... in the Sahara Desert.
   a. riding b. shopping c. swimming d. (safaris)

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

My name's Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

1. Zain lives in a ....
   a. village b. desert c. city d. town
2. Zain lives in a/an ....
   a. apartment b. tent c. house d. houseboat
3. Zain lives with his ....
   a. family b. friends c. cousins d. uncle

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (العيش على متن قارب) و (عامل المتجر) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1 — Review your vocabulary

▶ Write the meaning :

Living on a boat

- صيف ....
- يسافر ....
- يقابل ....
- يتحدث ....
- أماكن ....
- سياحى ....

A supermarket worker

- سوبر ماركت ....
- يفحص ....
- قريب ....
- يساعد ....
- يجد ....
- طيب / عطوف ....

Step 2 — Sentences

▶ Complete the sentences :

Living on a boat

1. My parents work on .... boats.
2. I see many interesting ....
3. I live on a boat in the ....
4. I .... people from all over the world.

A supermarket worker

1. She helps us when we can't .... something.
2. She .... the food is fresh.
3. She is very .... and happy.
4. Mona works at the ....

Step 3 — Topics

▶ Write paragraphs using the sentences :

Living on a boat

....

....

....

....

....

A supermarket worker

....

....

....

....

....

(_) (_)

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يحب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 My favorite room

My favorite room is the living room with the balcony[1]. I love the view from the balcony[2]. I can see the whole street[3]. I talk to my family and watch television in the living room[4]. For my sister, her bedroom is her favorite room[5]. She can relax and do her homework quietly[6].

2 My house

I live in a house with my family[7]. It's very big[8]. There are three bedrooms in our house[9]. There are two bathrooms[10]. There is a big kitchen where my mom cooks food[11]. There is a garden where I play with my brother and sister[12].

3 Hurghada

I live in a city called Hurghada[13]. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea[14]. It's a big city[15]. There's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do[16]. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris[17]. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars[18].

4 Places in my city

I live in a city[19]. There are many nice places in my city[20]. There is a supermarket where I can buy food to eat[21]. My school is near my house[22]. It's a place where I learn[23]. There is a hospital where I go when I am sick[24].

TEST YOUR SKILLS

Where do you live ?



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

street – bedroom – relax – between

Sara : Which is your favorite room ?

Noha : It's my (1) ....

Sara : Why do you like your bedroom ?

Noha : Because I can (2) .... in it.

Sara : Is there a balcony in your apartment ?

Noha : Yes, and we can see the whole (3) .... from it.

My Language

2 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1. .... (Who) is the hospital ?
 - Next to the school.
2. The chair is .... (on) the table and the bed.
3. The couch is .... (under) the living room.
4. How .... (much) people are there ? - Twelve.

3 Circle the correct preposition of place.

1. The lamp is (above – next) the table.
2. The supermarket is (behind – next) to the cinema.
3. I sit (between – in front) Ahmed and Omar.

My Writing

4 Punctuate the following.

where is the post office

....

....

5 Write THREE (3) sentences using prepositions of place.

museum - next to - hospital - in front of

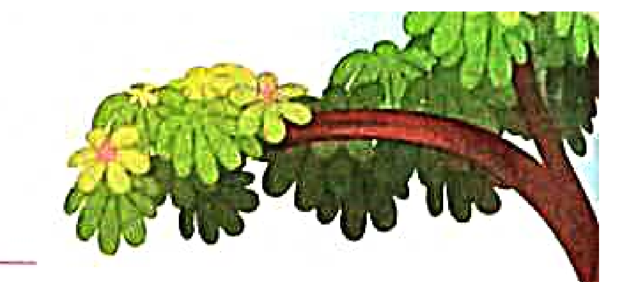
....

....

....

....

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



Review on unit 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الرابعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

kitchen	مطبخ	houseboat	منزل عائم
balcony	شرفة	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
bathroom	حمام	supermarket	سوبر ماركت
bedroom	حجرة نوم	post office	مكتب بريد
living room	حجرة معيشة	bazaar	بازار
dining room	حجرة طعام	safaris	رحلات سفارى
apartment	شقة سكنية	tourist	سائح
house	منزل	tent	خيمة

Phonics

/f/
fan
fish
foot

/v/
van
vegetables
living room

Language

1 Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



in front of أمام



on على



behind خلف



in فى



above أعلى



under تحت



between بين



next to بجانب

2 Giving Directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

- Turn right. استدر يمينًا.
- Turn left. استدر يسارًا.
- Go straight ahead. سر بشكل مستقيم.

Test 7 on Unit 4

نصوص الاستماع و التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Noha works at a supermarket.
2. She sells clothes and shoes.
3. Noha is unkind.
4. Noha is helpful.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My house is .... the shopping mall and the post office.
   a. next   b. between   c. in front   d. above
2. The .... is the place where I learn.
   a. hospital   b. office   c. supermarket   d. school
3. My friend lives on water. He lives on a ....
   a. rock   b. tent   c. houseboat   d. school
4. Where's the hospital? - .... straight ahead.
   a. Going   b. Go   c. Goes   d. Went

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

find - fresh - food - sells

Mona works at the supermarket near my house. I see her every week when I buy (1)........................ . She checks the food is (2)........................ . She helps me when I can't (3)........................ something.

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. I can relax in	a. when I'm in the Sahara Desert.
2. The school is next	b. my bedroom.
3. I go on safaris	c. on a tourist boat.
4. My parents work	d. to the hospital.
	e. under the bed.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Amr. I'm ten years old. I love living in a house because it is big. My house is lovely. There is a nice balcony so I can see the whole street. In my house, there are three bedrooms and a living room. Our kitchen is nice. My sister usually helps my mom organize it. I have dinner with my family in the dining room. My

grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister. On the weekend, we go to the park. I like to play with my friends **there**.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "**there**" refers to ....
   a. balcony b. house c. park d. friends
2. Amr loves the house because it is ....
   a. new b. old c. bad d. big

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Amr go on the weekend ?
   ....
4. Who does Amr play with at the park ?
   ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. checks – Fatima – fresh – the – food – is.
   ....
2. at – works – brother – the – My – supermarket.
   ....
3. your – work – Where – sister – does ?
   ....

7 Punctuate the following.

i play games with my friends on friday.
....

8 Write a paragraph of about (18 – 24) words using the following guiding elements.

Your town

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : next to - school

....
....
....
....
....

Test 8 on Unit 4

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Ali lives on a boat in the winter. ☐
2. His parents work on a tourist boat. ☐
3. Ali doesn't go with his parents. ☐
4. Ali's parents travel up and down the Nile. ☐

(البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My book is .... the door. I can't see it.
   a. next b. in front c. behind d. in
2. My grandparents like to live in the desert. They live in a big ....
   a. tent b. apartment c. houseboat d. nest
3. The hospital is .... to the school. I can get to it quickly.
   a. front b. between c. next d. at
4. I play computer games in the .... It's very comfortable there.
   a. kitchen b. living room c. rock d. tent

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

balcony – between – hospital – in front of

We live in a big house near the sea. We have a big (1) .... We put flowers in it. Our house is (2) .... the post office and the (3) .... We are a happy family.

(الشرقية - ديرب نجم ٢٠٢٣)

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. I live in a city (الاسكندرية - الجمرك ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. The living room.
2. Which is your favorite room? (المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. in the desert.
3. Some people live in tents (القاهرة - نبس ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. the supermarket.
4. The shopping mall is next to (كفر الشيخ - سيدي سالم ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. loves water.
	☐ e. called Hurghada.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Noura moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big and near Noura's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Noura's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Noura can see the street from the balcony.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Noura moved to a new ....
   a. house   b. city   c. country   d. apartment
2. Noura can watch TV in the ....
   a. kitchen   b. bedroom   c. living room   d. balcony

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is Noura's favorite room ?

....

4. Who does Noura live with ?

....

[البحيرة - ابو حمص ٢٠٢٣]

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. relax - bedroom – I – in - can - my. [القليوبية - الخانكة ٢٠٢٣]

....

2. take – bathroom – We – a shower – in – the. [المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٣]

....

3. live – I – next to – a village – Nile – in – the. [الإسكندرية - جمرك ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Punctuate the following.

jana is a kind supermarket worker [المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٣]

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR [24] words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite room

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : relax - balcony

....

....

....

....

....

[بني سويف - الفشن ٢٠٢٣]



تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

▸ **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

1. I live in a .... next to the Nile. [town – city – village]
2. My house is between a yellow house and a .... house. [red – brown – blue]

B. Language Functions

▸ **Read and complete the dialogue.**

bedroom – organize – room

Mom : Which is your favorite [1]........................ ?

Hamza : It's my [2]........................ .

Mom : Hamza, can you help me [3]........................ the kitchen ?

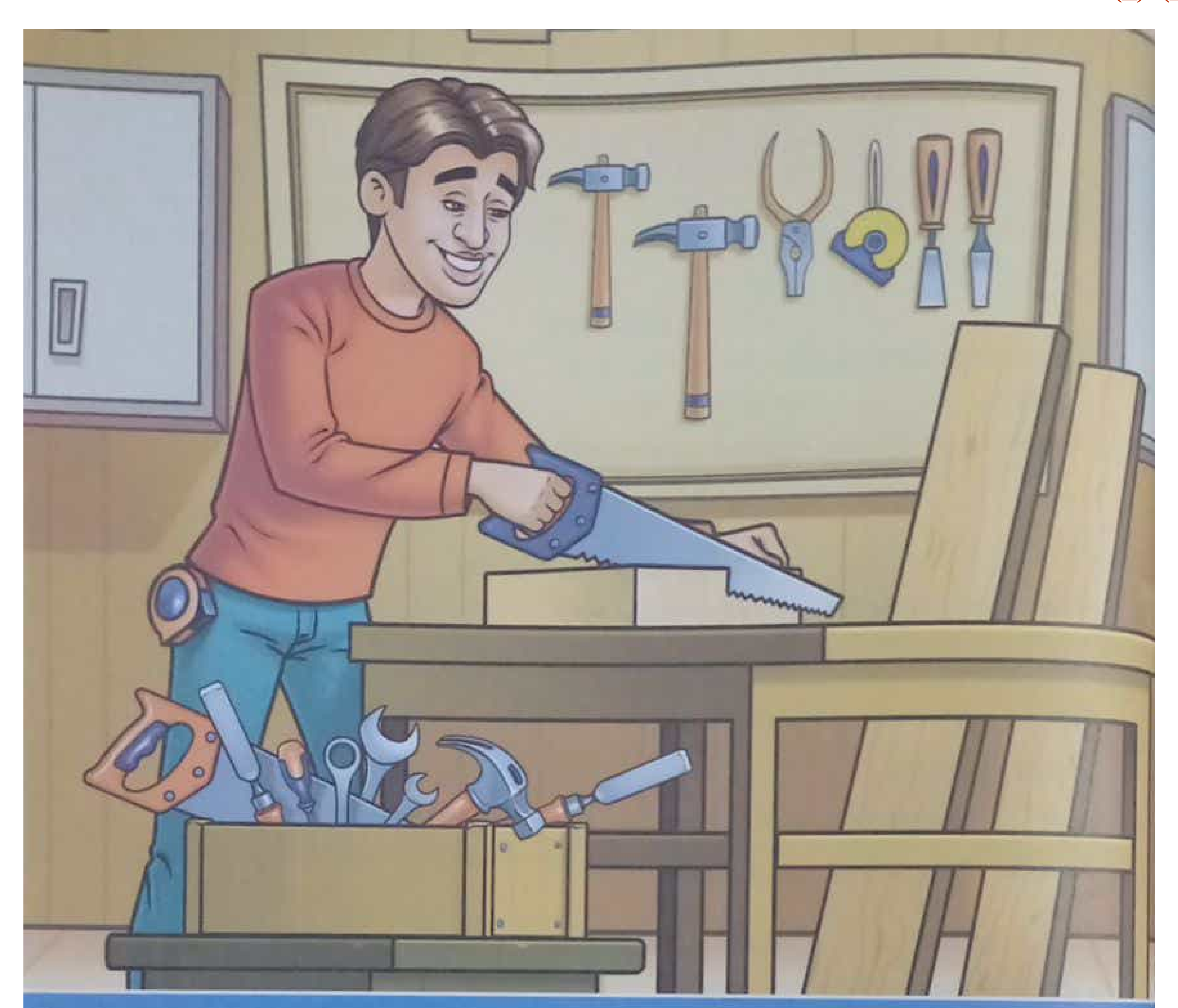
Hamza : That sounds good, let's do it.

C. Vocabulary and structures

▸ **Choose the correct answer.**

1. I take a shower in the ....
   a. dining room   b. kitchen   c. bathroom
2. I live .... a small town.
   a. on   b. in   c. next
3. I can see the whole street from the ....
   a. kitchen   b. balcony   c. bathroom
4. The school is in front .... the post office.
   a. on   b. of   c. behind
5. We can .... in our bedroom.
   a. relax   b. play   c. eat

(_) (_)



Unit 5 Where do you work?

أين تعمل؟

Aims of Unit Five : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الخامسة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, and write about workers in my community.
  - أستمع، أقرأ، وأكتب عن العمال في مجتمعي.
- learn about electricity. - أتعلم عن الكهرباء.
- practice using this, that, these, those.
  - أتدرب على استخدام this, that, these, those.
- practice word stress. - أتدرب على النطق المشدد للكلمة.
- think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
  - أفكر وأكتب عن الإيجابيات والسلبيات للوظائف المختلفة.
- make a report about workers in my community. - أقوم بعمل تقرير عن العمال في مجتمعي.

Lesson 1



▶ Listening and reading
▶ I love my job



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

electrician	كهربائى	plumber	سباك	trash	قمامة	messy	فوضوى
mechanic	ميكانيكى	bus driver	سائق أتوبيس	mail carrier	ساعى البريد	faucet	صنبور
pipe	ماسورة	parcel	طرد	garbage collector			جامع قمامة

Extra vocabulary

wet	رطب / مبلل	driving	القيادة	problem	مشكلة
young	صغير السن	hope	يأمل / أمل	difficult	صعب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
fix	يصلح	fixed	take out	يُخرج / يزيل	took out
wait	ينتظر	waited	forget	ينسى	forgot
drip	ينقط	dripped	drive	يقود	drove

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take out the trash	يُخرج القمامة	much better	افضل
What about ... ?	ماذا عن ... ؟	have to	يجب أن

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Different jobs	plumber - fixes	A plumber fixes pipes and faucets.
	electrician - work	An electrician loves making things work.
	bus driver - places	Bus drivers drive to many different places.
	garbage collector - garbage	A garbage collector works hard to collect garbage.

Did you know ? هل تعلم؟

- A broken faucet dripping once per second can waste more than 13,000 liters of water in a year.
يمكن للصنبور المعطل الذى يقطر مرة واحدة فى الثانية أن تهدر أكثر من ١٣٠٠٠ لتر من الماء فى السنة.
- Cairo produces around 20,000,000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.
تنتج مدينة القاهرة حوالى ٢٠٠٠٠٠٠٠ طن من القمامة كل عام يعمل جامعوا القمامة باجتهاد لجمع كل ذلك.

( ) ( )

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

• What is Dad's job ? - ما وظيفة الأب ؟



Dad, do you like your job ? أبي، هل تحب عملك ؟



Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's wet and messy because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

نعم، أحب أن أكون سباك. أحيانًا يكون المكان مبلل وفوضويًا لأنه يجب على إصلاح المواسير والصنابير.



Did you want to do a different job when you were young ?

هل أردت القيام بعمل مختلف عندما كنت صغيرًا ؟



Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.

نعم، أردت أن أصبح سائق حافلة أو ميكانيكيًا.



So what happened ? وماذا حدث ؟



Well, I don't really like driving! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!

حسنًا، أنا لا أحب القيادة حقًا! كنت أفضل بكثير في إصلاح المواسير والصنابير اكثر من اصلاح السيارات !



What about you, Youssef ? Do you like being an electrician ?

وماذا عنك يا يوسف ؟ هل تحب كونك كهربائيًا ؟



Yes, I love making things work! نعم، أحب أن أجعل الأشياء تعمل!



Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my parcel ....

أوه انظروا، ها هو ساعي البريد! أتمنى أن يكون لديه الطرد الخاص بي...



And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash! Wait please ..... وهناك جامع القمامة! أوه، لقد نسيت إخراج القمامة! انتظر من فضلك...

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What's the job of the father ?
- He is a plumber.

Practice 2. What does Youssef love doing ?
....

(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. A plumber fixes
2. An electrician loves
3. A garbage collector collects
4. The bus driver

(B)

- [ ] a. the trash.
- [ ] b. the pipes.
- [ ] c. making things work.
- [ ] d. drives the bus.
- [ ] e. teaches at the school.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. job – Which – most – interesting – is – the ?

....

2. driver – be – want – a bus – I – to.

....

3. forgot – I – out – to – take – the trash.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. If you have a problem with pipes in your house, you need a/an ....

a. electrician b. mail carrier c. bus driver d. plumber

2. A mail carrier delivers ....

a. parcels b. cars c. trash d. faucets

3. I want .... a mechanic.

a. are b. to be c. being d. is

4. When dad .... young, he wanted to be a doctor.

a. am b. is c. was d. were

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician fixes sockets. A garbage collector collects the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a plumber to fix pipes and faucets. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. All these workers should work together to help people and make their life easier.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. We need a/an .... to fix pipes and faucets.
   a. plumber   b. bus driver   c. electrician   d. mail carrier
2. The word "......................" in the text means garbage.
   a. letter   b. faucet   c. pipe   d. trash

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the bus driver do ?

....

4. Who collects the trash ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

do you like being an electrician

....

6 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Different jobs

Guiding elements :

- What does a mail carrier do ?
- What does an electrician do ?

....

....

....

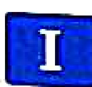
....

....

Lesson 2

▶ Electricity
▶ Language Focus





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

lightning	ظاهرة البرق	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية	storm	عاصفة
socket	مقبس كهرباء	plug	قابس (فيشة)	speed	سرعة

Extra vocabulary

electrical	كهربي	safely	بطريقة آمنة	dry	جاف
deliver	يوصل	flash	وميض (نور خاطف)	tools	أدوات
repair shop	ورشة إصلاح	electricity	كهرباء	wet	مبلل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
study	يدرس	studied	become	يصبح	became
control	يتحكم	controlled	put	يضع	put
touch	يلمس	touched	burn	يحرق	burnt
travel	ينتقل	traveled	get	يحصل على	got

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get an electric shock	يتعرض لصدمة كهربية	close to	قريبة من / تعادل
make sure	يتأكد من	know how to + inf.	يعرف كيف يقوم بـ ......

• Note : ▶ We add "ly" to an adjective to make an adverb. لاحظ: نضيف "ly" للصفة لتكون ظرف.

safe أمان ⟶ safely بطريقة آمنة

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The electricity	travel	Electricity travels very fast.
	dangerous	Electricity is very dangerous.
	shock - control	If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies.
	burn	Electricity can burn us.
Using electricity safely	touch - wet	Never touch anything electrical with wet hands.
	socket - plugs	Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.
	dry - make sure	Always make sure your hands are dry.

• Note : We use "Always" and "Never" to give instructions. لاحظ: نستخدم كلمة "دائمًا" و"أبدًا" في إعطاء التعليمات ويتبعهما مصدر الفعل

• Always study hard. (✓) • Never eat unhealthy food. (x)



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Don't touch the hot pot. It can .... you.
   a. travel b. study c. burn d. put
2. I like to watch the .... of lightning in the sky.
   a. smell b. flash c. sound d. water
3. The sun gives us .... during the day.
   a. gas b. oil c. water d. light
4. Make sure your hands are .... before you touch anything electrical.
   a. close b. natural c. dry d. wet
5. If we get an electric .... , we can't control our bodies.
   a. shock b. books c. ground d. advice
6. The .... knows how to work safely with electricity.
   a. farmer b. teacher c. electrician d. vet

( ) ( )

II Listening and Reading

▸ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.



Amira the electrician

الكهربائية أميرة



This is Amira, she's an **electrician**[1]. She **studied**[2] and practiced for three years before she became an electrician. She knows how to work safely with electricity.

هذه أميرة، تعمل كفنى كهرباء، درست وتدربت لمدة ثلاث سنوات قبل أن تصبح فى كهرباء، هى تعلم كيف تتعامل بشكل آمن مع الكهرباء.

Interviewer: Tell us something interesting about electricity. المحاور: أخبرنا بشيء مثير عن الكهرباء.



Amira: Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a **storm**[3] we sometimes see a **flash**[4] of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year!

أميرة: هل تعلم أن الكهرباء تنتقل بسرعة شديدة، قريبة من سرعة الضوء، أثناء وجود عاصفة أحياناً نرى وميض من الضوء. هذا الضوء به كمية كافية من الكهرباء تكفى ألف عائلة فى السنة!

Interviewer: Is electricity dangerous? المحاور: هل الكهرباء خطيرة؟

Amira: Yes, very dangerous. If we get an **electric shock**[5], we can't control our bodies. It can also **burn**[6] us.

أميرة: نعم، خطيرة جداً. إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربية، لا يمكننا التحكم فى أجسادنا. تستطيع تلك الصدمة أن تحرقنا.

[1] فنى كهرباء
[2] درست
[3] عاصفة
[4] وميض
[5] صدمة كهربية
[6] تحرق

Interviewer: How can we use electricity safely? المحاور: كيف يمكننا استخدام الكهرباء بأمان؟

Amira: Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.

أميرة: لا تلمس أى شيء كهرى بأيدى مبللة. لا تضع أى شيء فى المقبس، فقط استخدم القابس.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
حدد فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn 1. What does Amira do?
- She is an electrician.

Practice 2. Why is electricity dangerous?
....

III Language Focus

Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الإشارة

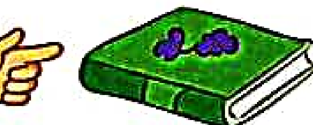
Usage : We use This, That, These, Those, to say how close an object is to the speaker.
تستخدم ضمائر الإشارة [This, That, These, Those] لتوضح مدى قرب الشيء من المتحدث.

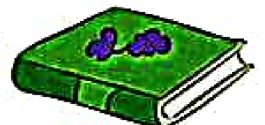
Near إشارة للقريب	Far إشارة للبعيد
This	That

Singular nouns مع الأسماء المفردة

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد قريب.

▸ this book





ex : This bus driver is taking me to school.

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد بعيد.

▸ that book

ex : That is the water dripping from the faucet.





Near	Far
These	Those

Plural nouns مع الأسماء الجمع

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.

▸ these books



ex : These mechanics work in the repair shop.



تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.

▸ those books





ex : Those children are going to school.



Notes for parents

• Help your child identify the demonstrative pronouns and their uses. • ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على ضمائر الإشارة واستخداماتهم



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and choose the correct demonstrative pronoun.

1. (This - These) car is very expensive.
2. (Those - That) mountains are very high.
3. (This - These) pens are blue.
4. Can you paint (this - these) room ?
5. (That - Those) shoes are very big.
6. (These - This) map will help us.
7. My father bought (those - that) toys for me.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - the children's - These - bags.

....

2. tools - the electrician's - Are - those ?

....

3. book - is - This - my.

....

4. that - ball - Is - your ?

....

5. blue - This - my - is - pen.

....

3 Read and complete.

This - Those - plumbers - is - mechanics - plumber

1. This .... the mail carrier.
2. .... children are watching TV.
3. Those are the .... who fix the faucets.
4. .... is the faucet in my bathroom.
5. Those .... fix the cars.





General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We sometimes see a flash of .... in a storm.
   a. electricity b. shock c. lightning d. water
2. Never touch anything electrical with .... hands.
   a. wet b. dry c. clever d. open
3. .... flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.
   a. They b. That c. Those d. These
4. .... are my friends.
   a. This b. Those c. That d. Them

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – electrician – She – an.

....

2. it – Is – to – easy – an electrician – become ?

....

3. can – electricity – How – safely – use – we ?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wet – speed – electricity – dry

I'm Mona. I'm an electrician. I studied and practiced for three years before I became an electrician. I know how to work safely with (1) .... Electricity travels very fast, close to the (2) .... of light. Electricity is very dangerous. Make sure your hands are (3) .... before you touch anything electrical.

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The electricity can	☐ a. in our house.
2. Why is electricity	☐ b. electricity travel ?
3. We need electricity	☐ c. burn us.
4. How fast can	☐ d. dangerous ?
	☐ e. raises horses.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Amira. I'm an electrician. I studied and practiced for three years before I became an electrician. It is not an easy job, but I like it. Electricity is very important in our houses. We use electricity to light our houses. Electricity travels very fast close to the speed of light. In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1000 families for a year !

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d.

1. The text is about ....

   a. electricity b. houses c. light d. storm

2. Being an electrician is a/an .... job.

   a. easy b. difficult c. simple d. bad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is electricity important in our houses ?

   ....

4. What did Amira do before she became an electrician ?

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

why is electricity dangerous

....

7 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Electricity

Guiding elements :

wet hands – electric shock

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3

- Three Cousins
- Pronunciation
- Math

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

screwdriver	مفك البراغي	blocks	مكعبات
patient	صبور	curious	فضولي - محب الاستطلاع
tape measure	شريط القياس	adult	بالغ
architect	مهندس معماري	experiment	يجرب / تجربة

Extra vocabulary

little	صغير السن	fan	مروحة	explain	يشرح / يفسر
radio	جهاز راديو	top	أعلى / قمة	cell phone	هاتف محمول
help	مساعدة	safety	أمان	change	يغير - يعدل

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- call each other يتصل بعضهم البعض
- when I'm older عندما أكبر
- all the time طوال الوقت
- get angry at يغضب من



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amir was always .... He was never angry.
   a. patient b. ugly c. sad d. bad
2. We can use a .... to open old radios.
   a. block b. tape c. screwdriver d. phone
3. She learned about .... with electricity.
   a. time b. safety c. playing d. blocks

لارا، تاليا وأمير أبناء عم/ خال، لكنهم مختلفين جدا. عندما كانت لارا طفلة، كانت تحب أن تجرب وكانت محبة للاستطلاع. دائما كانت تحمل مفك البراغي وتفتح أجهزة الراديو القديمة، الهواتف المحمولة وأي شئ به كهرباء. كان سؤالها المفضل، كيف يعمل ؟ تعلمت كيف تتعامل بأمان مع الكهرباء. عندما كانت تاليا طفلة رضيعة، كانت تلعب بالمكعبات. كانت تضع قطعه مكعبات فوق الأخرى. عندما أصبحت أكبر سنا، بدأت في صنع أشياء. لقد صنعت منزلا صغيرا للكلب الخاص بها وسرير لدمية أختها. كانت تحمل دائما شريط قياس وقلم رصاص.

دائما كان أمير صبور جدا وكان يحب مساعدة الناس. في بعض الأحيان، يغضب الأخوة الكبار من إخواتهم الصغار، لكن أمير لم يغضب ابدا. كان يلعب، يساعد ويشرح أشياء طوال الوقت.

II Listening and Reading

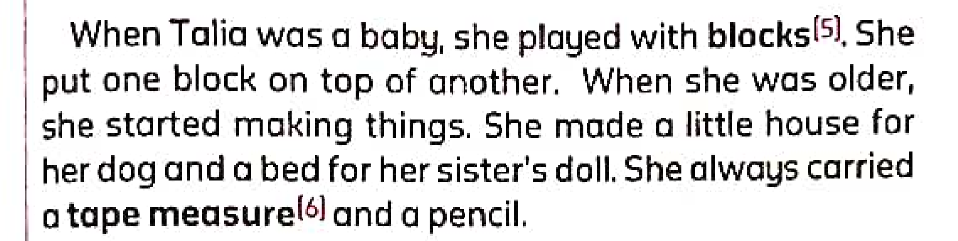


Listen, look and read. استمع، انظر واقرأ.

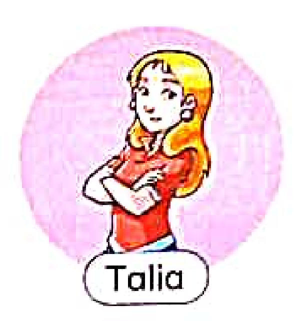
Three cousins أبناء العم الثلاث



Lara, Talia, and Amir are **cousins**[1], but they are all very different. When Lara was a child, she loved to **experiment**[2]. She was very **curious**[3]. She always carried a **screwdriver**[4] and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was How does it work ? She learned about safety with electricity.



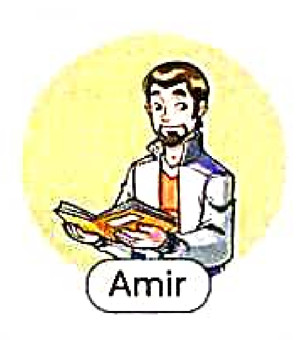
When Talia was a baby, she played with **blocks**[5]. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a **tape measure**[6] and a pencil.



Amir was always very **patient**[7] and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can **get angry**[8] at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.

Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all **adults**[9] but they still call each other when they need some help.

[1] أبناء العم/الخال
[2] تختبر / تجرب
[3] محب للاستطلاع
[4] مفك البراغي
[5] مكعبات
[6] شريط قياس
[7] صبور
[8] يغضب
[9] أشخاص بالغين



Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. Talia made a .... for her sister's doll.

a. house b. bed c. room d. table

Practice 2. . Lara is a/an ....

a. doctor b. teacher c. electrician d. vet

لارا، تاليا وأمير أبناء عم/ خال، لكنهم مختلفين جدا. عندما كانت لارا طفلة، كانت تحب أن تجرب وكانت محبة للاستطلاع. دائما كانت تحمل مفك البراغي وتفتح أجهزة الراديو القديمة، الهواتف المحمولة وأي شئ به كهرباء. كان سؤالها المفضل، كيف يعمل ؟ تعلمت كيف تتعامل بأمان مع الكهرباء. عندما كانت تاليا طفلة رضيعة، كانت تلعب بالمكعبات. كانت تضع قطعه مكعبات فوق الأخرى. عندما أصبحت أكبر سنا، بدأت في صنع أشياء. لقد صنعت منزلا صغيرا للكلب الخاص بها وسرير لدمية أختها. كانت تحمل دائما شريط قياس وقلم رصاص.

دائما كان أمير صبور جدا وكان يحب مساعدة الناس. في بعض الأحيان، يغضب الأخوة الكبار من إخواتهم الصغار، لكن أمير لم يغضب ابدا. كان يلعب، يساعد ويشرح أشياء طوال الوقت.

اليوم، لارا، تاليا وأمير جميعهم أشخاص بالغون لكنهم لا يزالون يتصلون ببعضهم البعض عندما يحتاجون إلى بعض المساعدة.



III Language

Remember :

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

▶ **Usage** الاستخدام

◀ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي.

Affirmative	الإثبات	She loved to experiment.
Negative	النفي	She didn't love to experiment.
Yes / No Question	السؤال بـ"هل"	Did she love to experiment ?
Wh-question	السؤال بكلمة استفهام	What did she love to do ?



Pop Quiz on Language

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. She always .... a pencil when she was little.
   a. carry b. carrying c. carried d. to carry
2. When my brother .... a child, he played with toys.
   a. were b. is c. are d. was
3. What .... you like to play with when you were little ?
   a. did b. do c. does d. doing
4. Did you .... a house for your sister's doll ?
   a. made b. make c. making d. makes
5. He .... to Paris last weekend.
   a. traveling b. travels c. traveled d. travel
6. .... he visit his grandmother last night ?
   a. Did b. Are c. Does d. Is



1 A syllable

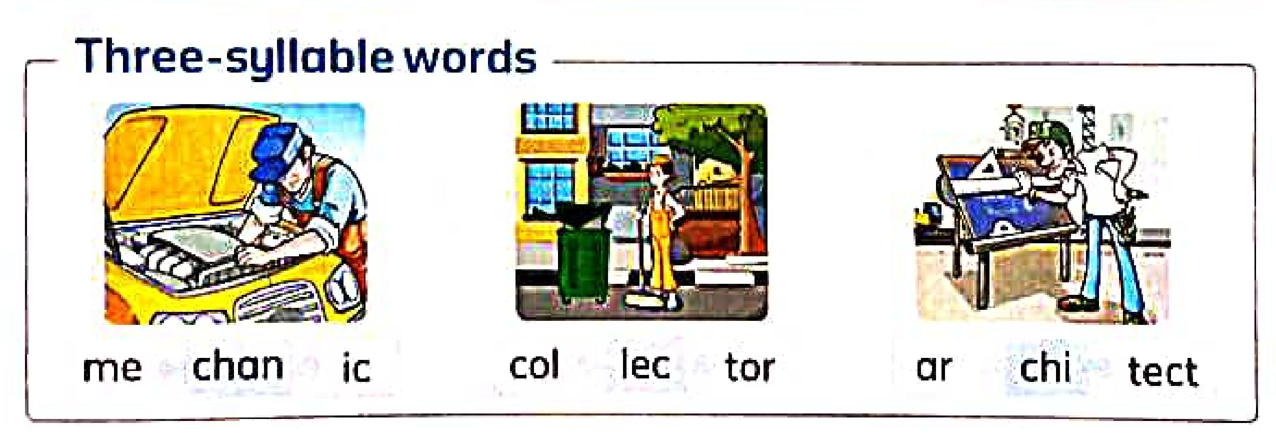
- is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

مقطع لفظى : هو جزء من كلمة يحتوى على صوت متحرك واحد .

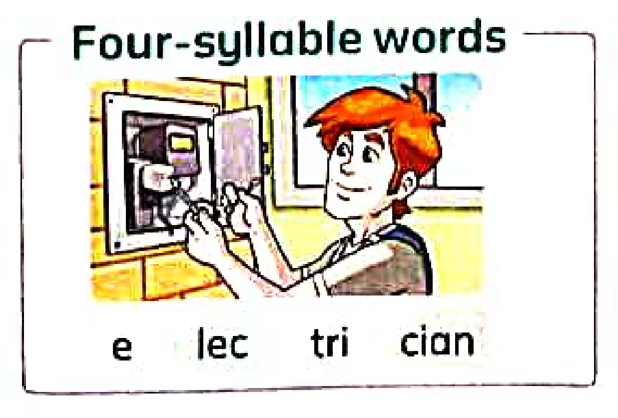
Two-syllable words



Three-syllable words



Four-syllable words





2 A stressed syllable

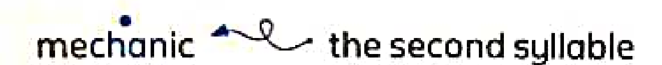
is a stressed part of a word or phrase. It is said more strongly than the rest of it.

المقطع المشدد : هو جزء من كلمة يتم نطقه بشكل أقوى من باقي أجزاء الكلمة.

▶ Which syllable is stressed ? - أي مقطع يكون مشدد ؟



plumber → the first syllable



mechanic → the second syllable





doctor → the first syllable



dentist → the first syllable





teacher → the first syllable

driver → the first syllable





Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 Listen, choose the correct stressed syllable and write it.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. plumber plumber ....
2. teacher teacher ....
3. mechanic mechanic ....
4. driver driver ....
5. doctor doctor ....

2 Blend the syllables and write.

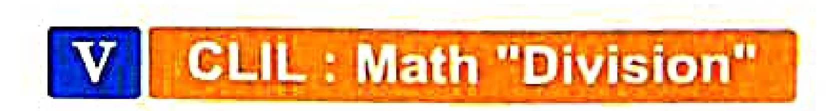
1. e + lec + tri + cian = ...
2. ar + chi + tect = ...
3. plumb + er = ...
4. col + lec + tor = ...

3 Read and complete.

one – Electrician – two – Dentist – three

1. "Driver" has .... syllables.
2. ".................." has four syllables.
3. "Architect" has .... syllables.
4. ".................." has two syllables.





V CLIL : Math "Division"



Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

A mathematician works with numbers and math problems. - عالم الرياضيات يعمل مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.

Division القسمة

- To share things equally, you can divide. لمشاركة الأشياء بالتساوي، يمكنك التقسيم.
- 12 sweets are divided among 3 children. ١٢ قطعة حلوى تقسم على ٣ أطفال.
- How many sweets does each child get? كم عدد قطع الحلوى التي سيحصل عليها كل طفل؟

Separate 12 sweets into 3 equal groups (number of children).

قسم الـ ١٢ قطعة حلوى إلى ٣ مجموعات متساوية (عدد الأطفال).

The division sentence : $12 \div 3 = 4$

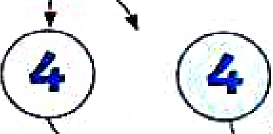




Each child gets 4 sweets. كل طفل سيحصل على ٤ قطع حلويات.



12 number of sweets عدد قطع الحلوى




4 4 4

number of sweets each child gets
عدد قطع الحلوى لكل طفل
(العدد بداخل كل دائرة)

number of children
عدد الأطفال (عدد الدوائر)



Pop Quiz on Math

▶ Divide.

1. 8 ÷ 2 = ...



2. 18 ÷ 3 = ...



3. 40 ÷ 4 = ...





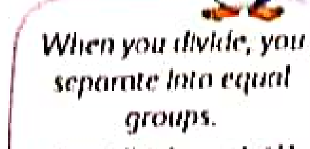
How to solve word problems on division.

كيفية حل المسائل الكلامية في القسمة

problem :

Wael has 12 shells. He wants to put the same number of shells in each of 3 boxes.
How many shells will be in each box ?

وائل لديه ١٢ صدفة، ويريد أن يضعها في ٣ صناديق بنفس التساوي. كم سيكون عدد الصدف في كل صندوق؟



When you divide, you separate into equal groups.

للقيام بعملية القسمة، نقسم العدد إلى مجموعات متساوية.

Total number العدد الكلي	÷	number of groups عدد المجموعات المقسوم عليه	= 4
12 (shells)	÷	3 (boxes)	12 ÷ 3 = 4

Number of shells in each group

So, there will be 4 shells in each box.

سوف يجد ٤ صدفات في كل صندوق

• Note : ÷ is a division symbol called divided by.

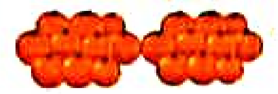
• ÷ هي علامة القسمة بمعنى مقسوم على

 **Look and learn.** انظر وتعلم.

So, What we do when we have missing numbers.

• ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل عندما لا نعرف رقم في المعادلة الحسابية.

20 ÷ ?? = 2 ⇒ 20 ÷ 2 = 10

 ÷ ...... =

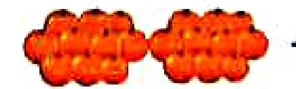
So, the missing number is 10.

• إذًا فالرقم المفقود في المعادلة هو رقم (١٠).

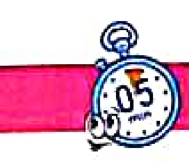


Here's the equation : 20 ÷ 10 = 2

• المعادلة الكاملة هي :







Pop Quiz on Math



1 Write the missing numbers.

1. 100 ÷ .... = 2
2. 20 ÷ 5 = ...
3. 100 ÷ 25 = ...
4. 9 ÷ .... = 3
5. 100 ÷ .... = 5
6. 10 ÷ 2 = ...

2 Read, think and solve the problems.



1. The band played for 15 minutes.
   Each song was 3 minutes long.
   How many songs did the band play ?

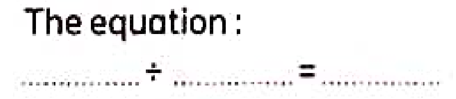
   The equation :

   .... ÷ .... = ...



2. There are two hundred children in Grade 4.
   Today, they are going on a school trip.
   Each school bus carries 50 children.
   How many buses do they need ?

   The equation :



   .... ÷ .... = ...

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. explained – Amir – things – the time – all.

....

2. do – want – What job – you – do – to ?

....

3. curious – My – is – cousin – very.

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

older – put – house – job

When Dina was a baby, she played with blocks. She (1) .... one block on top of another. When she was (2) ...., she started making things. She made a little (3) .... for her dog.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She loved to experiment. She was very ....
   a. sad   b. angry   c. curious   d. lazy
2. She carried a .... to open old radios.
   a. socket   b. screwdriver   c. tape measure   d. pencil
3. When Talia .... a baby, she played with blocks.
   a. were   b. is   c. was   d. are
4. He didn't .... angry with his little brothers.
   a. got   b. get   c. gets   d. getting

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. Maged, Salma and Amal
2. She likes helping
3. She made a little house
4. Talia is my

(B)

- [ ] a. people.
- [ ] b. different things.
- [ ] c. for her dog.
- [ ] d. are all adults.
- [ ] e. little cousin.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Noha and Amr are my cousins. They are different. Noha is an electrician. When Noha was a child, she loved to experiment. Noha was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones and anything that had electricity. She learned about safety with electricity. My cousin Amir is a teacher. He is always patient. When Amir was young, he liked helping people. Amir never gets angry with his students. He always explains things for his students.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Noha learned about .... with electricity.

a. blocks   b. safety   c. animals   d. shock

2. The underlined word "young" means ....

a. angry   b. calm   c. lazy   d. little

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Noha carry ?

....

4. What did Amir like when he was young ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

what do you like to do

....

7 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A job you want to do

Guiding elements :

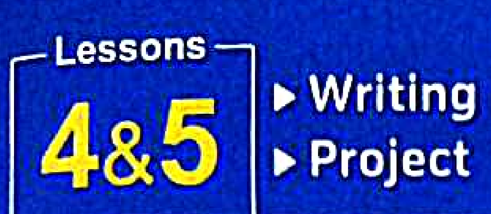
- What's your favorite job?
- What do you do in your job?

....

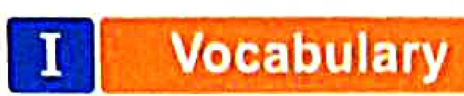
....

....

....







Key vocabulary

pros	إيجابيات - مزايا	cons	سلبيات - عيوب	weather	طقس	outside	بالخارج

Extra vocabulary

heavy	ثقيل	everybody / everyone	كل شخص (الجميع)	report	تقرير
points	نقاط	mail bag	حقيبة البريد	cleaner	عامل نظافة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
walk	يسير	walked	tell	يخبر	told
connect	يصل	connected	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- On the one hand, ... من ناحية،
- On the other hand, ... من ناحية أخرى،
- think about يفكر في
- get a lot of exercise يتدرب كثيرًا
- all day طوال اليوم
- keep it clean يحافظ عليه نظيف

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Mail carriers	outside	Mail carriers are outside all day.
	walk - exercise	Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise.
	like - mail	Everybody likes getting mail.
	bag - heavy	The mail bag is very heavy.
	wake up - early	They wake up very early.

(__) (__)

II Listening and Reading

 Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



The good and bad things about a mail carrier



My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're **talking**[1] about the good and bad things about different **jobs**[2]. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the **pros**[3] and **cons**[4].

Pros and cons of being a mail carrier



What's it like to be a **mail carrier**[5] ? There are some good and bad points about the job. On the one hand, mail carriers are **outside**[6] all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the **weather**[7] is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.

On the other hand, there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very **heavy**[8]. Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

[1] يتحدث
[2] وظائف
[3] إيجابيات
[4] سلبيات
[5] ساعي البريد
[6] بالخارج
[7] طقس
[8] ثقيل

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn 1. Mail carriers .... all day and get a lot of exercise.
a. get b. walk c. start d. wake

Practice 2. The mail bag is very ....
a. thin b. fat c. easy d. heavy

اسمي شريفة. في الفصل هذا الأسبوع، نتحدث عن الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة حول الوظائف المختلفة. خالتي تعمل ساعية بريد في أمريكا. تحدثت إليها عن وظيفتها، وقد أخبرتني بعض الإيجابيات والسلبيات.

إيجابيات وسلبيات كونك ساعي بريد

كيف يبدو الأمر عندما تكون ساعي بريد ؟ يوجد بعض النقاط الجيدة والسيئة حول الوظيفة. من ناحية، ساعي البريد موجود في الخارج طوال اليوم. هذا رائع عندما يكون الطقس جيد ولكن ليس ممتعًا عندما يكون الطقس حارًا جدًا أو باردًا جدًا. يسير ساعي البريد طوال اليوم ويمارس الكثير من التمارين. الجميع يحبون تلقي رسائل البريد لذلك كل شخص يحب مقابلة ساعي البريد.

من ناحية أخرى يوجد أشياء ليست جيدة يجب التفكير فيها. كونك ساعي بريد ليست وظيفة سهلة. حقيبة رسائل البريد ثقيلة جدًا. شيء سيء آخر هو أنهم يستيقظون مبكرًا جدًا. خالتي تبدأ العمل في تمام الساعة ٦ صباحًا.



III Writing Skill

Writing about the pros and cons of different jobs.

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Pros and cons of mail carrier's job

Pros إيجابيات

1. Mail carriers walk all day.
2. Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.
3. Mail carriers are outside and it's great when the weather is good.



Cons سلبيات

1. Mail carriers are outside all day and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or very cold.
2. The mail bag is very heavy.
3. Mail carriers wake up very early.



Pop Quiz on Writing

▶ Look, think about the pros and cons of being a garbage collector and write.

Pros	Cons
Garbage collectors get a lot of exercise.	....
....	It's not easy.
....	....
....	....





Listen, read and identify. استمع، اقرأ وتعرف.

People who help us

Workers who made our school



The plumbers
connect the pipes so that we have water.





The electricians
connect electricity so that we can use lights.





The cleaners
keep the school clean.





The bus drivers
bring the children to school.





The garbage collectors
take away our garbage.





The mechanics
fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.



(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. The cleaners keep the school clean. ☐
2. The electricians connect the pipes. ☐
3. The plumbers connect electricity. ☐
4. The mechanic fixes the school buses. ☐

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. fixes – cars – buses – and – The mechanic.

....

2. brings – to – The bus driver – the children – school.

....

3. are – day – all – Mail carriers – outside.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The electricians connect .... so that we can use lights.
   a. bus b. bag c. garbage d. electricity
2. The garbage collectors take away our ....
   a. garbage b. pipes c. water d. food
3. Mail carriers wake .... very early.
   a. up b. in c. at d. on
4. I found .... cat in the park.
   a. those b. this c. these d. they

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. Also the mail bag is very heavy. They are very tired when they come back home.

A. **Choose the correct answer.**

1. The heavy bag is one of the .... of being a mail carrier.

 a. pros b. cons c. hand d. games

2. Mail carriers can get a lot of .... because they walk all the day.

 a. electricity b. cars c. exercise d. bags

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Why are mail carriers very tired when they come back home ?

....

4. Where are the mail carriers all day ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

the cleaners keep the school clean

....

6 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR [24] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Pros and cons of the mail carrier's job

Guiding elements :

Pros	Cons
get a lot of exercise	the mail bag is heavy
walk all the day	wake up very early

....

....

....

....



Describe the relationship between two people, events , ideas or pieces of information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى وصف علاقة بين شخصين، حدثين، فكرتين أو معلومتين فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد حل هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا أكثر من مرة للتمكن من فهم الترابط الموجود بين الأفكار والمعلومات بالنص.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage. The mechanics fix the buses that bring the children to school.

شرح الحل تقرأ النص جيدًا وتفهم الترابط بين الأشخاص والأحداث والمعلومات الواردة.

1. How do the mechanics help the bus drivers ?

The mechanics fix the buses.

2. Who brings the children to school ?

The bus driver brings the children to school.

3. Who helps us have water ?

The plumber helps us have water.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She always carried a screwdriver to open old radios and cell phones. When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. Her sister thanked her.

1. Why did Lara carry a screwdriver ?

....

2. What did Talia make for her dog ?

....

3. Why did Talia's sister thank her ?

....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (وظيفة ساعى البريد) و(الاشخاص الى تساعدنا) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1 — Review your vocabulary

▶ Write the meaning :

A mail carrier's job

بالخارج	....
تمرين	....
يمشى	....
سهل	....
ثقيل	....
يستيقظ	....

People who help us

سباك	....
مواسير	....
أطفال	....
يصلح	....
كهرباء	....
قمامة	....

Step 2 — Sentences

▶ Complete the sentences :

A mail carrier's job

1. Mail carriers .... very early.
2. The mail bag is very ....
3. Mail carriers get a lot of ....
4. Mail carriers .... all day.

People who help us

1. The mechanics .... the cars and buses.
2. The .... connects the pipes.
3. The bus drivers bring the .... to school.
4. The electricians connect ....

Step 3 — Topics

▶ Write paragraphs using the sentences :

"A mail carrier's job"

....
....
....
....
....

"People who help us"

....
....
....
....
....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 How workers help us every day

The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water[1]. The bus drivers bring children to school[2]. The mail carriers are delivering letters[3]. We need garbage collectors to take away our trash[4]. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights[5]. All these jobs are very important.[6]

2 Mail carriers

Mail carriers deliver letters[7]. They are outside all day[8]. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise[9]. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job[10]. The mail bag is very heavy[11]. They wake up very early[12].

3 Your favorite job

My favorite job is an electrician[13]. When I was a child, I loved to experiment[14]. I always carry a screwdriver[15]. I open old radios and cell phones [16]. I open anything that has electricity[17]. I learn about safety with electricity[18].

4 Electricity

It is not easy to become an electrician[19]. Electricity is very dangerous[20]. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies[21]. It can also burn us[22]. Never touch anything electrical with wet hands[23]. Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light[24].

(_) (_)

TEST YOUR SKILLS



Where do you work ?



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Reading

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

places - bus - electrician - pipes

Ali : Which job is the most interesting ?

Omar: I think being a (1) .... driver is the most interesting.

Ali : Why do you think so ?

Omar: Because he drives to many different (2) ....

Ali : What do you want to be, Omar ?

Omar: I want to be an (3) ....

My Language

2 Read and write the correct form of the word between brackets.

1. .... (This) are the plumber's tools.
2. This mechanic .... (are) fixing cars.
3. The mail carrier delivered .... (this) letters.
4. .... (These) is the water dripping from the faucet.

3 Write "this" or "these".

1. Is .... your drink ?
2. .... aren't my trainers.
3. Is .... an interesting museum ?
4. .... are new bikes.
5. .... is my house.
6. .... is a screwdriver.
7. .... are drivers.
8. What is .... ?
9. Are .... your books ?

My Writing

4 Punctuate the following.

who helps you at home

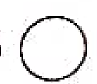
....

5 Write THREE (3) sentences about electricity.

....

....

....



قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



Review on Unit 5

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الخامسة فى ورقة واحدة



Vocabulary

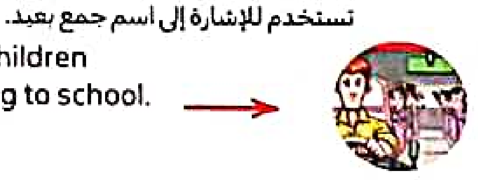
English	Arabic
bus driver	سائق حافلة
electrician	كهربائى
plumber	سباك
mail carrier	ساعى بريد
mechanic	ميكانيكى
garbage collector	جامع قمامة
architect	مهندس معمارى
lightning	برق
socket	مقبس
plug	قابس
tape measure	شريط قياس
blocks	مكعبات
pipe	ماسورة
screwdriver	مفك براغى
parcel	طرد

Phonics

- **Two-syllable words**
  - plumb er
  - teach er
  - doc tor
- **Three-syllable words**
  - me chan ic
  - ar chi tect
  - col lec tor
- **Four-syllable words**
  - e lec tri cian
  - col est or

Language

Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الإشارة

Near إشارة للقريب	Far إشارة للبعيد
This	**That**
Singular nouns مع الأسماء المفردة	
تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد قريب.	تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد بعيد.
This bus driver is taking me to school. → 	That is the water dripping from faucet. → 
These	**Those**
Plural nouns مع الأسماء الجمع	
تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.	تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.
These mechanics work in a repair shop. → 	Those children are going to school. 

Test 9 on Unit 5

نصوص الاستماع
و التقييمات الشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Talia played with blocks. ☐
2. Talia made a big house for her little cat. ☐
3. Talia is an architect now. ☐
4. Talia always carries a tape measure. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A mail carrier .... your letters.
   a. connects   b. drives   c. delivers   d. puts
2. She always carried a screwdriver. Now, she is a/an ....
   a. doctor   b. electrician   c. teacher   d. dentist
3. These .... the plumber's tools.
   a. is   b. was   c. are   d. does
4. When I was little, I .... with blocks and dolls.
   a. played   b. plays   c. play   d. playing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

explained – helping – taller – angry

Ahmed was always very patient. He likes (1)...................... people. Sometimes, big brothers can get (2)...................... at their little brothers, but Ahmed was never angry. He played, helped, and (3)...................... things all the time.

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. I want to be	☐ a. only use plugs.
2. Never put anything into a socket,	☐ b. are playing football.
3. Those children	☐ c. a bus driver.
4. I hope the mail carrier has	☐ d. my parcel.
	☐ e. never angry.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people around us work hard to help us. Together, we help each other. For example, a plumber connects the pipes and faucets, so you have water. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean. A bus driver drives to many different places and helps lots of people.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. A .... helps us to have water.
   a. plumber b. cleaner c. collector d. vet
2. A plumber connects the .... and faucets.
   a. cars b. pipes c. lights d. letters

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the bus driver do ?
   ....
4. What does the garbage collector do ?
   ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. carriers – Mail – outside – are – day – all.
   ....
2. to do – like – We – things – different.
   ....
3. wants – be – to – electrician – She – an.
   ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence.

what's Amira's job

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

Mechanics

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : fix - job

....
....
....
....
....
....

Test 10 on Unit 5

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. A bus driver takes children to school. ☐
2. A mechanic connects the electricity. ☐
3. A plumber fixes the pipes and faucets. ☐
4. A mail carrier takes away the garbage. ☐

(سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٣)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. These .... my father's tools. He uses them to fix things.
   a. am b. is c. are d. was
2. .... apples are on the tree. I can't get them.
   a. Those b. This c. That d. They
3. It's very .... to touch electrical things with wet hands.
   a. safe b. happy c. dangerous d. good
4. Lara's father uses a .... to fix electrical things.
   a. screwdriver b. pencil case c. block d. doll

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pipes - lights - garbage - electrician

We have a big house. A (1) .... collector takes away all garbage. An (2) .... connects electricity so we can use lights. A plumber connects the (3) .... so we can have water. We like our house very much. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. How fast can (الغربية - غرب المحلة ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. want to do?
2. What job do you (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. electricity travel?
3. These mechanics (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. takes children to school.
4. The bus driver (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. fix cars and buses.
	☐ e. teaches children.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

My dad is an electrician. He connects electricity to houses. He helps people use lights, watch TV and use computers. Electricity is important, but it can harm us, too. My dad knows how to work safely with electricity. He uses a screwdriver and never touches electrical things with wet hands. He never puts anything in a socket.

(__) (__)

A. **Choose the correct answer.**

1. "Electricity can harm us" that means it is ....
   a. good b. safe c. dangerous d. nice
2. My dad doesn't touch electrical things with .... hands.
   a. clean b. wet c. dry d. angry

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What is dad's job ?

....

4. Why does dad connect electricity to houses ? [قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣]

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. lightning – sometimes – We – a flash – see – of. [الجيزة - ٦ أكتوبر ٢٠٢٣]

....

2. bag – The mail – very – is – heavy. [القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٣]

....

3. use – safely – How – can – we – electricity ? [القاهرة - روض الفرج ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Punctuate the following.

why do we use electricity [الإسكندرية - العجمى ٢٠٢٣]

....

8 Write an email about TWENTY FOUR (24) words to your friend Ali about your father's job. Your name is Yasser and your email address is yasser@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com. [الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٣]

New Message

To :

From :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

.... ,





A. Listening

▸ **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

1. A .... fixes the pipes and faucets. (plumber – mechanic – mail carrier)
2. A/An .... connects the electricity. (electrician – plumber – vet)

B. Language Functions

▸ **Read and complete the dialogue.**

do – fixes – mechanic

Noha : Hello, Kareema. What's your favorite job ?

Kareema : Hello, Noha. My favorite job is a (1) ....

Noha : What does a mechanic (2) .... ?

Kareema : A mechanic (3) .... the cars and buses.

C. Vocabulary and structures

▸ **Choose the correct answer.**

1. A .... takes away our garbage to keep our street clean.
   a. plumber b. garbage collector c. bus driver
2. This screwdriver .... the carpenter's tool.
   a. are b. is c. were
3. .... is the mechanic who fixed my car.
   a. These b. They c. That
4. Electricity is very .... It can burn us.
   a. safe b. quiet c. dangerous
5. The mail carrier .... the letters.
   a. writes b. delivers c. talks



Unit 6 What do you do ?

ماذا تعمل ؟

Aims of Unit Six : الأهداف العامة للوحدة السادسة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- read and learn about more jobs.
  - أقرأ وأتعلم عن المزيد من الوظائف.
- explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.
  - أستكشف ما هي الصناعة وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.
- know about prime numbers.
  - أتعلم عن الأرقام الأولية.
- distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.
  - أميز وأنطق الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة.
- learn about words with the prefix (dis-).
  - أتعلم عن الكلمات التي بها البادئة (-dis).
- write about a job you want to do.
  - أكتب عن وظيفة تريد أن تعمل بها.

(_) (_)



Lesson 1 ▶ What do you do?



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

fisherman	صياد سمك	fishing	صيد السمك
guide	مرشد سياحي	tourism industry	صناعة السياحة
farmer	فلاح / مُزارع	farming	زراعة
librarian	أمين مكتبة	education	التعليم

Extra vocabulary

tourist	سائح	restaurant	مطعم	factory	مصنع
history	تاريخ	net	شبكة	hotel	فندق
transportation	وسائل النقل	country	دولة	library	مكتبة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
pick	يقطف / يلتقط	picked
explain	يفسر	explained

Irregular

Present		Past
catch	يصطاد	caught
sell	يبيع	sold
tell	يخبر	told

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go out on a boat	يخرج على متن قارب	It's my job to ...	وظيفتي هي أن ...
come back	يعود	lots of	الكثير من
on the sea	في البحر	work in	يعمل في [مكان / مجال]

Did you know ?
In 2019, about 13 million tourists came to Egypt. Where do tourists go in Egypt ?

هل تعلم ؟ في عام ٢٠١٩، جاء نحو حوالي ١٣ مليون سائح إلى مصر. إلى أين ذهبوا في مصر ؟

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A fisherman	fisherman - wake up	A fisherman wakes up very early every day.
	boat - catch	He goes out on a boat and catches fish.
	sell - market	He sells fish in the market.
	fisherman - boat	A fisherman works on his boat.
A farmer	grow	A farmer grows food.
	look after - water	He looks after the trees and water them.
	pick	He picks the fruit.
	sell - factory	He sells the fruit to the factories and the supermarkets.
A guide	tourism	A guide works in the tourism industry.
	explain - history	He explains the history.
	tourists - information	He tells the tourists lots of interesting information.
A librarian	library	A librarian works in a school library.
	look after - books	He looks after all the books.
	find - information	He helps children find the information they need.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My father is a .... He catches a lot of fish.
   a. builder b. librarian c. fisherman d. mechanic
2. My grandfather grows vegetables and fruit in his farm. He's a/an ....
   a. farmer b. engineer c. teacher d. architect
3. My mother works in a library. She's a ....
   a. guide b. farmer c. fisherman d. librarian
4. A .... works in the tourism industry.
   a. librarian b. guide c. fisherman d. teacher

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

What jobs do these people do ?

1. I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my **boat**[1] and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the **market**[2]. My fish go to **restaurants**[3] and homes all over the world.

2. I'm a farmer. I **grow**[4] oranges. All year, I **look after**[5] the trees and I give them water and **nutrients**[6]. Then, I **pick**[7] the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.

3. I'm a guide. I work in the **tourism**[8] industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the **history**[9] and tell the tourists lots of interesting **information**[10] about the places they visit.

4. I'm a librarian. I work in a school **library**[11]. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

[1] قارب
[2] سوق
[3] مطاعم
[4] يزرع
[5] يعتني بـ
[6] عناصر غذائية
[7] يقطف
[8] سياحة
[9] تاريخ
[10] معلومات
[11] مكتبة



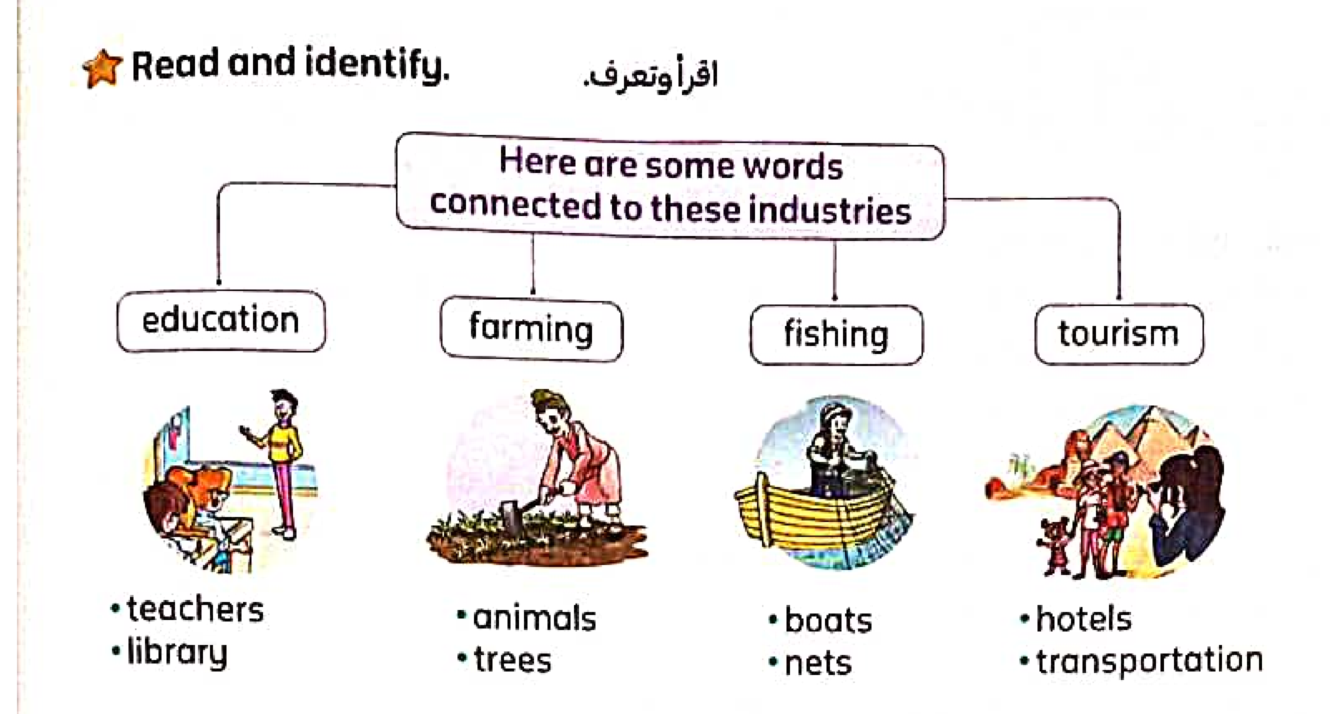
١. أنا صياد. أستيقظ مبكرًا جدًا كل يوم. أخرج بقاربي واصطاد الأسماك. ثم بعد الظهيرة أعود وأبيع أسماكي في السوق. أسماكي تذهب إلى المطاعم والمنازل حول العالم.

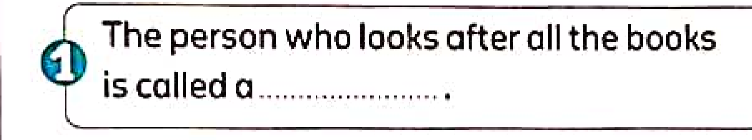
٢. أنا فلاح. أزرع البرتقال. أعتني بالأشجار وأعطيها الماء والعناصر الغذائية طوال العام. ثم أقطف الفاكهة. أرسل الكثير من الفاكهة للمصنع لصنع عصير البرتقال. أبيع أيضًا بعض البرتقال الخاص بي للسوبر ماركت.

٣. أنا مرشد سياحي. أعمل في مجال السياحة. يأتي الناس إلى بلدي ووظيفتي أن أشرح التاريخ وأخبر السياح بالكثير من المعلومات المثيرة عن الأماكن التي يزورونها.

٤. أنا أمينة مكتبة. أعمل في مكتبة مدرسية. وظيفتي هي الاعتناء بكل الكتب. أشترى الكثير من الكتب الجديدة وأساعد الأطفال في العثور على المعلومات التي يحتاجونها.

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.



Pop Quiz on Listening and Reading

▶ **Read and write the name of each person's job.**



1. The person who looks after all the books is called a ....



2. The person who catches fish is called a ....



3. The person who tells the tourists lots of interesting information is called a ....



4. The person who grows plants is called a ....

(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. I am an electrician. ☐
2. I go out on my boat and catch fish. ☐
3. I come back at night. ☐
4. I sell my fish in the school. ☐

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. wake - every - I - day - up - early.

....

2. library - A librarian - works - school - the - in.

....

3. on - works - Who - the sea ?

....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. I'm a farmer.
2. I'm a librarian.
3. The guide works in
4. The fisherman catches

(B)

☐ a. the tourism industry.
☐ b. and sells fish.
☐ c. I look after the trees.
☐ d. I catch fish.
☐ e. I work in a school library.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An .... works on the sea.
   a. librarian b. guide c. engineer d. fisherman
2. A .... helps us find the information in the library.
   a. farmer b. fisherman c. guide d. librarian
3. A farmer looks .... the trees all year.
   a. on b. in c. after d. to
4. My uncle wasn't at home. He went .... on his boat.
   a. out b. in c. for d. to

(__) (__)

5 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

supermarket - send - play - pick

I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. I (1) .... the fruit. I (2) .... a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the (3) ....

6 **Punctuate the following.**

it's my job to explain the history

....

7 **Write an email about TWENTY FOUR (24) words to your friend Noha about different jobs. Your name is Sara and your email address is sara@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is noha@gmail.com.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : fisherman - librarian

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

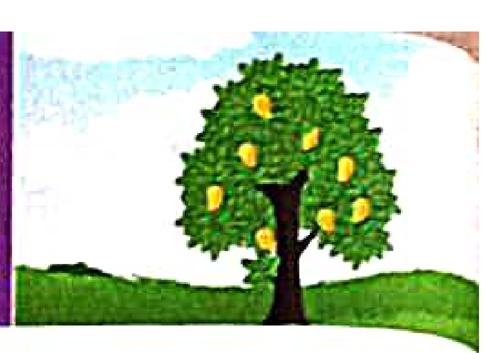
....

....

....



Lesson 2 ▸ CLIL : Science



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

renewable	متجددة	non-renewable	غير متجددة

Extra vocabulary

wood	خشب	cons	سلبيات	money	نقود
mango tree	شجرة مانجو	decision	قرار	wrong	خطأ
coal	فحم	oil	بترول	again	مرة أخرى
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	wave energy	طاقة الأمواج

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

grow bigger and bigger	يزداد حجمًا	cut down	يقطع
look out of	ينظر من خلال	energy sources	مصادر الطاقة
run out	ينفذ		

Study these Definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

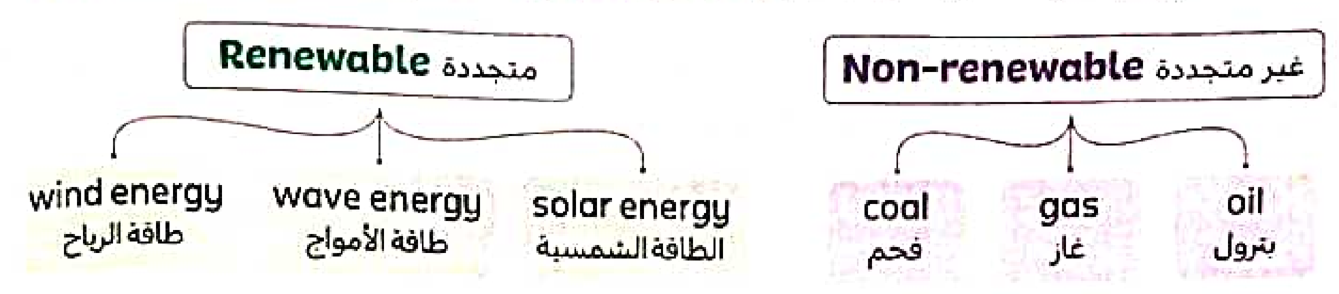
Renewable قابل للتجديد
- It can grow again or never run out يمكن أن تنمو مرة أخرى أو لا تنفذ أبدًا.

Non-renewable غير قابل للتجديد
- It can run out or never grow again. يمكن أن تنفذ أو لا تنمو مجددًا.

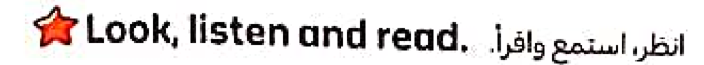
Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Two mango trees	mango tree	Sara and Malak had two beautiful mango trees.
	cut down - wood	Malak cut down her tree and sold the wood.
	grow - bigger	Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger.
	no mangoes	Malak had no mangoes and no more wood.

Read and identify the "Energy sources". اقرأ وتعرف على "مصادر الطاقة".



II Reading



Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Two mango trees
شجرتان من المانجو

The beginning

Sara and Malak are sisters. **Each**[1] sister had a **beautiful**[2] **mango**[3] tree next to her house. **Every year**[4], the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

The middle

One day, Malak said, "I don't **need**[5] mangoes. I need **money**[6]. Let's **cut down**[7] my tree. I can **sell**[8] the **wood**.[9]" She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.

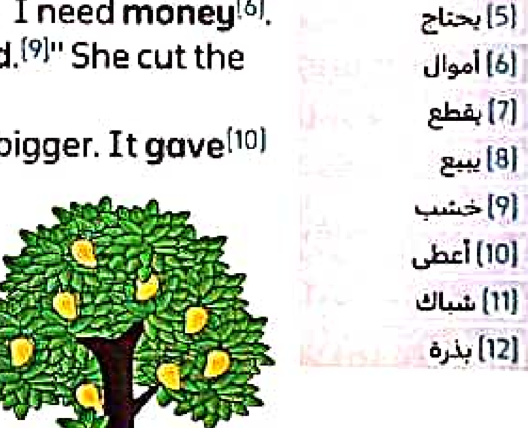
Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It **gave**[10] Sara more mangoes.

The end

Malak looked out of the **window**[11].

There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

"Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango **seed**[12], and it will grow into a big tree."



[1] كل
[2] جميل
[3] فاكهة المانجو
[4] كل سنة
[5] يحتاج
[6] أموال
[7] يقطع
[8] يبيع
[9] خشب
[10] أعطى
[11] شباك
[12] بذرة

Determine the meaning of words. وضح معنى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The opposite of the underlined word "sell" is ....
a. take b. see c. buy d. fly

Practice 2. The word "beautiful" in the text means.................... .
a. ugly b. nice c. lazy d. boring

سارة وملك أختان. كل أخت لديها شجرة مانجو جميلة بجانب بيتها. كل عام، كان الأخوات يأكلن المانجو الجميل. لعب أطفالهم تحت الأشجار. قالت ملك ذات يوم، "لست بحاجة إلى مانجو. أحتاج للمال. هيا نقطع شجرتي. يمكنني بيع الخشب". قطعت الشجرة وباعت الخشب. كانت ملك سعيدة. في العام التالي، نمت شجرة المانجو الخاصة بسارة بشكل أكبر وأكبر. أعطت سارة المزيد من المانجو. نظرت ملك من النافذة. لم يكن هناك شجرة مانجو. لم يكن لديها مانجو ولا مزيد من الخشب. قالت سارة : "لا تقلقي". "ازرعي بذرة المانجو هذه وسوف تنمو لتصبح شجرة كبيرة".

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He is .... down trees to sell the wood.
   a. washing b. looking c. cutting d. running
2. Malak looked .... of the window.
   a. up b. in c. down d. out
3. .... worry, you will arrive early.
   a. Didn't b. Don't c. Doesn't d. Doing
4. Plant the seed and it will be a ....
   a. tree b. window c. table d. door

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. non-renewable – or – Is – renewable – a mango – tree ?

....

2. will – into – grow – The seed – tree – a big.

....

3. cut – Let's – down – tree – my.

....

3 Read and match [A] with [B].

[A]	[B]
1. Plant this	☐ a. grow again.
2. Non-renewable never	☐ b. mango seed.
3. We have a tree next	☐ c. and sold the wood.
4. They cut down trees	☐ d. to my house.
	☐ e. a renewable energy resource.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wood – sad – happy – cut down

Gameela needed money. She (1) .... her mango tree. She sold the (2) .... She was (3) .... Now, there is no mango tree and no more wood.

5 Punctuate the following.

sara and Malak are sisters

....



Lesson 3

- Fresh fish van
- Pronunciation
- CLIL : Math

I Vocabulary



Key vocabulary

fresh	طازج	disappointed	محبط
fish van	شاحنة بيع الأسماك	engine	محرك

Extra vocabulary

sound	صوت (شيء)	surprised	مندهش
problem	مشكلة	lovely	جميل - محبوب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
shout	يصيح	shouted	hear	يسمع	heard
want	يريد	wanted	teach	يُدرس	taught
fix	يصلح	fixed	drive	يقود	drove

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

around the village	حول القرية	have fun	يستمتع
start his van	يشغل شاحنته	all about	كل شيء عن

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Fresh fish van	fisherman - fresh fish	A fisherman sells fresh fish.
	van - start	He couldn't start his van.
	mom - fix	Mom could fix the van.
	gave - fresh fish	The fisherman gave mom ten fresh fish.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A .... fixes cars.
   a. fisherman b. mechanic c. farmer d. plumber
2. The van was fixed and we heard the sound of the ....
   a. music b. engine c. faucet d. pipe
3. The old fisherman .... lovely fresh fish.
   a. drew b. caught c. threw d. wrote

 Look, listen and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Fresh fish van

شاحنة أسماك طازجة

The beginning

There's an old **fisherman**[1] in my **village**[2]. He drives around the village in an old **van**[3]. He likes his job. He has fun.

He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish."

The middle

One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and **disappointed**[4].

My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help.

Mom's dad [my grandpa] was a **mechanic**[5]. He **taught**[6] her all about cars. She looked at the old van's **engine**[7]. "It is a very simple **problem**[8]. I can **fix**[9] it," said Mom. The old fisherman was surprised.



[1] صياد سمك
[2] قرية
[3] شاحنة
[4] محبط
[5] ميكانيكي
[6] علّم
[7] محرك
[8] مشكلة بسيطة
[9] يصلح

The end

Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed! "Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار

Learn 1. Why was the fisherman disappointed ?
- Because he couldn't start his van.

Practice 2. Who helped the fisherman fix his van ?
....

يوجد صياد عجوز في قريتي. يقود حول القرية بشاحنة قديمة. يحب عمله. ويستمتع بصيح، "سمك! سمك طازج! تعال واحصل على سمك طازج جميل." في يوما ما، كان أمام منزل. لم يستطع تشغيل شاحنته. كان حزينًا ومحبطًا. أمي رأت الرجل. كان الجو حارًا في الشمس. أرادت المساعدة. كان والد أمي (جدي) ميكانيكيا. علمها كل شئ عن السيارات. نظرت إلى محرك الشاحنة القديمة. قالت امي: "إنها مشكلة بسيطة للغاية. أستطيع إصلاحها". كان الصياد العجوز مندهشًا. ثم سمعنا صوت المحرك. تم إصلاح شاحنته! قال الصياد: "شكرًا". لقد أعطى أمي عشرة أسماك طازجة.



Pop Quiz on Reading

▶ Read the story and put it in the correct order.

① The fisherman drives around the village in an old van.





◯ Suddenly, he couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed.

◯ He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish."





◯ She looked at the old van's engine. "It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom.

◯ Mom saw the man and wanted to help.





◯ Then, we heard the sound of the engine and his van was fixed!

◯ "Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave her ten fresh fish.



II Pronunciation

Short vowel sounds


sun شمس

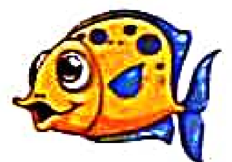
The letter "u" makes the sound / ʌ /.

ex.: fun مرح   run يجرى


van
شاحنة صغيرة

The letter "a" makes the sound / æ / .

ex.: sad حزين   man رجل   dad أب


fish
سمكة

The letter "i" makes the sound / I / .

ex.: sit يجلس   pin دبوس   hit يضرب


ten
رقم عشرة

The letter "e" makes the sound / e / .

ex.: fresh طازج   engine محرك   help يساعد

III Language

The prefix "dis-"

The prefix "dis-" means "not"   البادئة "- dis" تعنى "ليس"

disagree = not agree

dislike = not like

He dislikes ice cream.   هو لا يحب الآيس كريم.

Read and learn.

obey يطيع →	disobey يرفض الطاعة / يعصى	agree يوافق →	disagree يرفض
appear يظهر →	disappear يختفي	like يحب →	dislike لا يحب / يكره

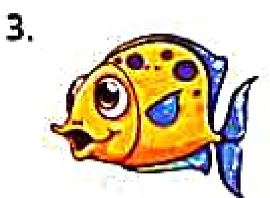
Pop Quiz on Phonics

1 Look and write the missing sound.

1. s _ n

2. 

v _ n

3. 

f _ sh

4. 


t _ n

2 Look and complete the sentences.

disagree - disappeared - disappointed - dislikes - disobeyed

1. 

The boy is ....
He didn't pass the test.

2. 

She ....
ice cream.

3. 

These friends
....

4. 

I'm sorry because I
.... my mom.

5. 

The rabbit ....
from the hat.

IV CLIL : Math

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

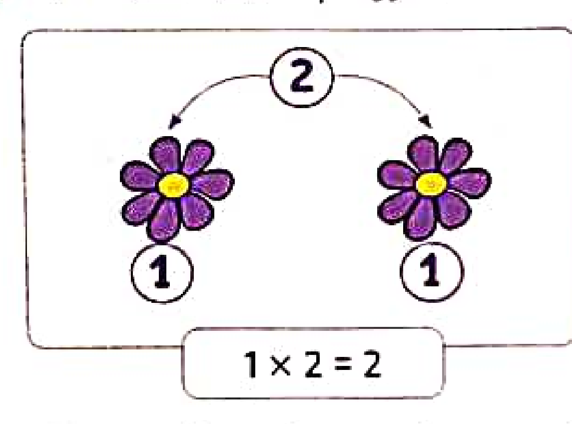
Prime numbers

A prime number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1.

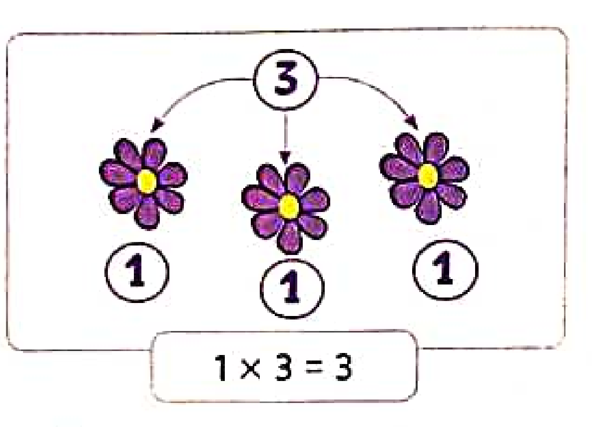
الرقم الأولي هو رقم يمكنك قسمته على نفسه فقط وعلى رقم واحد.

Ex : 2 , 3 , 5 , 7 , 11 , 13 , 17 , 19 , 23 and 29 ... etc

Look and learn. انظر وتعلم.



1 × 2 = 2



1 × 3 = 3

- The smallest prime numbers are : 2 , 3 , 5

Pop Quiz on Math

1 Complete with "prime number" or "non-prime number".

a. 2 is .... b. 4 is .... c. 1 is ....

d. 5 is .... e. 6 is .... f. 7 is ....

2 Read and circle.

1. Which number is not a prime number ? 2 6 5
2. One is a prime number. true false

3 Read and tick (✓) if the number is a "prime number".

a. 4 ◯ b. 28 ◯ c. 11 ◯

d. 29 ◯ e. 7 ◯ f. 10 ◯

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. There's an old fisherman in my village. ☐
2. The fisherman sells fish. ☐
3. He doesn't like his job. ☐
4. His fish is bad. ☐

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The fisherman sells	☐ a. his job.
2. The fisherman's van	☐ b. stopped.
3. My mom could fix	☐ c. in my village.
4. There is a fisherman	☐ d. the van.
	☐ e. lovely fish.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

engine – van – fish – disappointed

The old fisherman drives around the village in an old van. One day, he couldn't start his (1) .... He was sad and (2) .... A mechanic looked at the old van's (3) .... It was a simple problem. He fixed his van.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old car. He shouted, fish ! Fresh fish ! The fisherman's car stopped in front of my house. He was very sad. My grandfather was a mechanic. He taught my father all about cars. My father fixed the car. The fisherman was happy and thanked my father. He gave my father ten fresh fish.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The fisherman gave my father .... fresh fish.

   a. 12   b. 11   c. 10   d. 13

2. My .... was a mechanic.

a. mom b. grandfather c. brother d. uncle

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why was the fisherman sad ?

....

4. Who taught the father all about cars ?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The mechanic can .... the engine.

a. break b. fix c. get d. come

2. The prefix "dis" means ....

a. full b. again c. yes d. not

3. My grandpa taught me all .... cars.

a. of b. around c. off d. about

4. She .... ice cream.

a. don't like b. dislikes c. like to d. like

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – a fisherman – There – village – my – in.

....

2. get – and – Come – lovely – your – fish.

....

3. the – does – sell – What – fisherman ?

....

7 Punctuate the following.

a fisherman couldn't start his van

....



Lessons 4&5

- Writing
- Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

trash	قمامة	surprising	مفاجئ - مدهش
patient	صبور	shelf	رف

Extra vocabulary

exciting	مثير / رائع	carefully	بحرص
questions	أسئلة	different	مختلف
ready to	مستعد لـ	the best	الأفضل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	throw	يلقي	threw
change	يغير	changed	teach	يُدرّس / يُعلّم	taught

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف	
respect	when you are polite and kind	عندما تكون مهذب ولطيف
patient	someone who doesn't get angry easily	الشخص الذي لا يغضب بسهولة

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Teachers	encourage	Teachers need to encourage their students.
	patient	They need to be very patient.
	hours - work	They work for many hours every day.
	hard - exciting	It's hard work, but it's exciting.
	change - lives	A teacher can change their students' lives.



II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

What are the good and bad things about being a teacher?

When people ask me, "What do you want to do?" I answer: " I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world".

For a **teacher**[1], every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' **lives**[2] so teachers need to be very **patient**[3]. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting.

Teachers need to think quickly. They need to **encourage**[4] their **students**[5]. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

[1] معلم / معلمة
[2] حيوات
[3] صبور
[4] يشجع
[5] طلاب

Demonstrate understanding of specific details
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn 1. What do teachers need to be?
- They need to be very patient.

Practice 2. Is being a teacher a hard job?
....

عندما كان يسألني الناس "ماذا تحب أن تعمل؟ "كانت إجابتي "أود أن أكون معلم." بالنسبة لي أنها أفضل وظيفة في العالم.
بالنسبة للمعلم، كل يوم مختلف. يسأل الطلاب دائمًا أسئلة مفاجئة. يمكن للمعلم أن يغير حياة طلابه لذا يحتاج المعلمون إلى التحلي بالصبر الشديد. إنهم يعملون لساعات عديدة كل يوم. إنه عمل شاق، لكنه مثير. يحتاج المعلمون إلى التفكير بسرعة. إنهم بحاجة إلى تشجيع طلابهم. المعلم الجيد جاهز دائمًا ليتعلم. يقوم المعلمون بالتدريس لطلابهم، ولكن الطلاب يقومون أيضًا بتعليم معلميهم. كل فرد في الفصل يعرف أشياء مختلفة.

III Language Functions

Questions	Answers
What do you want to be? ماذا تريد أن تكون؟	I want to be a teacher. أريد أن أصبح معلم.
What should a good teacher do? ماذا يجب أن يفعل المعلم الجيد؟	A good teacher is always ready to learn. المعلم الجيد دائمًا يكون مستعد للتعلم.
Is being a teacher an important job? Why? هل كونك معلم وظيفة مهمة؟ لماذا؟	Yes, because they can change their students' lives. نعم، لأنهم يمكن أن يغيروا حياة الطلاب.



Look and read. انظر واقرأ

Showing respect إظهار الاحترام

How to show respect
كيف تظهر الاحترام



I respect the cleaner.
I don't throw trash.
احترم عامل النظافة.
لا ألقي القمامة [على الأرض].



I respect the teacher.
I listen to him carefully.
أحترم المعلم.
أستمع إليه بحرص.



I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus.
أحترم سائق الحافلة. أقول له شكرًا عندما أنزل من الحافلة.



I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the shelf.
أنا أحترم أمين المكتبة. أعيد كتبي على الرف.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. A teacher can change their students' lives.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The teacher's job is not ....
   a. surprising b. quiet c. easy d. difficult
2. Teachers need to think ....
   a. quickly b. slowly c. safely d. easily

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can a teacher change ?
   ....
4. What do students always ask ?
   ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Teachers need to	☐ a. the people around me.
2. I show respect to	☐ b. encourage their students.
3. I say thank you when	☐ c. I get off the bus.
4. I put my books	☐ d. on the shelf.
	☐ e. to bad people.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. need - be - to – Teachers – patient.
   ....
2. is – to learn – ready – teacher – always – A good.
   ....
3. a teacher - to be – Why - want - you - do ?
   ....



Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة (الرئيسية / العامة) بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة) للنص.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة

Read and learn how to answer :

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. A good teacher is always ready to learn. They need to encourage their students. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives so they need to be very patient.

شرح الحل بعد قراءة كل الجمل نلاحظ أن النص يدور حول [The teachers]

1. The text is about ....
   Or : The main / general idea of the text is about ....
   Or : The text talks about ....
   Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. engineers b. teachers c. farmers d. vets

2. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   Teachers are very important for us.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى

Read and answer the questions :

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

1. The text is about "A .... ".

a. teacher b. guide
c. fisherman d. farmer

2. Summarize the text in one sentence.



يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [وظيفة معلم] و [وظيفة المزارع] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
A teacher's job	▶ Write the meaning : مفاجئ .... يشجع .... صبور .... يفسر .... جاهز .... يعلم	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. A good teacher is always .... to learn. 2. Teachers need to be very .... 3. Teachers need to .... their students. 4. Students always ask .... questions.	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "A teacher's job" ....
A farmer's job	برتقال .... يعتنى بـ .... مصنع .... يقطف .... يبيع .... عناصر غذائية	1. Farmers send a lot of the fruit to the .... to make orange juice. 2. Farmers .... the trees. 3. Farmers grow .... 4. Farmers .... the fruit to the supermarket.	▶ Write an email using the sentences : "A farmer's job" ....



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٩ جملة].

1 A farmer

My dad is a farmer[1]. He grows oranges[2]. He looks after the trees[3]. He gives them water and nutrients[4]. He picks the fruit[5]. He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice[6].

2 A fisherman's job

There's an old fisherman in my village[7]. He drives around the village[8]. He likes his job[9]. He has fun[10]. He sells fresh fish[11]. My mom always buys fish from him[12].

3 The guide

I want to be a guide[13]. The guide works in tourism industry[14]. People come to our country and the guide explains the history to the tourists[15]. He tells lots of interesting information about the places they visit[16]. The guide works outside[17]. This is an interesting job[18].

4 A librarian

My mother is a librarian[19]. She works in a school library and looks after all the books[20]. She buys lots of new books[21]. She helps children find the information they need[22]. She likes her job[23].

5 A teacher

Being a teacher is not easy[24]. For a teacher every day is different[25]. Students always ask surprising questions[26]. Teachers can change their students' lives[27]. Teachers need to be very patient[28]. They work for many hours every day[29].

( ) ( )

TEST YOUR SKILLS



What do you do ?



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with word in the box.

early - school - fisherman - market

Nabil : What do you do ?
Amr : I'm a (1) ....
Nabil : When do you get up ?
Amr : I get up very (2) .... ever day.
Nabil : What do you do with fish you catch ?
Amr : I sell my fish in the (3) ....
Nabil : That's great !

2 What do these people do ? Read and complete.

grow – keep – catch – explain

1. Guides .... the history.
2. Farmers .... food.
3. Librarians .... all the books.
4. Fishermen .... fish.

My Writing

3 Punctuate the following sentence.

i'm a guide

....

4 Write three sentences about your favorite job.

....

....

....

My Project

5 Make a poster about .

"How to show respect"

◯ قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



Review on Unit 6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة السادسة في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

fisherman	صياد
guide	مرشد
librarian	أمين مكتبة
farmer	فلاح
education	تعليم
farming	الزراعة
tourism	سياحة
teacher	معلم
cut down	يقطع
restaurant	مطعم
renewable	متجدد
non-renewable	غير متجدد
wood	خشب
fresh	طازج

Phonics

Short vowels

a → /æ/
- sad
- man

i → /I/
- sit
- pin

e → /e/
- fresh
- engine

u → /ʌ/
- fun
- run

Language

The prefix "dis-" البادئة "dis -"

The prefix "dis-" means "not" البادئة "dis -" تعني "ليس"

disagree = not agree

dislike = not like

He dislikes ice cream. هو لا يحب الآيس كريم.

obey يطيع	→ disobey يرفض الطاعة / يعصى	agree يوافق	→ disagree يرفض
appear يظهر	→ disappear يختفي	like يحب	→ dislike لا يحب

Test 11 on Unit 6

نصوص الاستماع والتفيمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. My uncle is good at looking after the plants.
2. My uncle grows apples.
3. My uncle looks after the trees.
4. He sends the fruit to the factory to make orange juice.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An .... looks after all books.
   a. vet   b. engineer   c. librarian   d. guide
2. I explain the history to the tourists. I work in the .... industry.
   a. education   b. fishing   c. farming   d. tourism
3. A fisherman works .... the sea.
   a. on   b. of   c. under   d. next
4. .... and get your lovely fresh fish.
   a. Came   b. Coming   c. Come   d. Comes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

electricity - books - information - library

I'm Marwa. I like books very much. I'm a librarian. I work in a school (1) .... It's my job to look after all the (2) .... I buy lots of new books and I help children find the (3) .... they need. It is an interesting job for me. I like it.

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. I catch fish.	a. a lot of interesting information.
2. A guide tells the tourists	b. teacher.
3. A librarian works	c. drives his van.
4. We respect our	d. in a school library.
	e. I work in the fishing industry.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country

and its my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. It's my job to **look after** all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined phrase "**look after**" means ....
   a. cut down b. take care of c. come back d. lots of
2. A .... explains the history.
   a. guide b. librarian c. vet d. farmer

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

....

4. Who works in the tourism industry ?

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. want – do – to – be – What – you ?

....

2. next to – are – their – The mango – house – trees.

....

3. fruit - is – Mango – my - favorite.

....

7 Punctuate the following.

is being a teacher an important job

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR [24] sentences using the following guiding elements.

A fisherman

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : catch fish – sell

....

....

....

....



Test 12 on Unit 6

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. I'm a guide. ☐
2. I wake up very early every day. ☐
3. I catch fish on my boat. ☐
4. I sell my fish in the market. (الفيوم - يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٣) ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We like our .... We meet them every day at school.
   a. teachers b. mechanics c. vets d. doctors
2. We respect the .... so much, so I don't throw trash.
   a. mechanic b. cleaner c. plumber d. farmer
3. What .... the old man sell ?
   a. do b. are c. does d. am
4. The librarian looks .... all the books.
   a. after b. on c. down d. of

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

students – learn – teach – class

Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their (1) .... A good teacher is always ready to (2) .... Teachers teach their students, but students also (3) .... their teachers.

(الأقصر ٢٠٢٣)

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The fisherman works (سوهاج - سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. to many different places.
2. A bus driver drives (نموذج وزاره ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. the history.
3. Who works in (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. to think quickly.
4. A guide explains (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. on the sea.
	☐ e. a school ?

(_) (_)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Hussein. My uncle is a fisherman. He has a boat. Every morning, he goes to the Nile to catch fish. In the afternoon, my uncle goes home with a lot of fish. He sells some fish at the market. He cooks some fish and eats his lunch. My uncle likes his job because it's fun. I want to be a fisherman when I grow up.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The text tells us about ....
   a. a fisherman b. a boat c. fish d. a market
2. The underlined word "sells" is the opposite of ....
   a. buys b. sends c. catches d. goes

B. Read and answer the following questions:

3. Where does Hussein's uncle go in the morning?
....
4. Why does Hussein's uncle like his job?
....

[دمياط - كفر سعد ٢٠٢٣]

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. farmers – do – What – grow? [القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٣]
....
2. respect – I – librarian – the. [بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣]
....
3. these – people – What – do – jobs – do? [البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٣]
....

7 Punctuate the following.

what do you want to be [البحيرة ٢٠٢٣]
....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.

"The farmer" مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements: farm - look after
....
....
....
....

[دمياط ٢٠٢٣]





نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

A. Listening

▸ **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

1. I want to be a/an .... (teacher – engineer – librarian)
2. I buy lots of new .... (books – paper – clothes)

B. Language Functions

▸ **Read and complete the dialogue.**

job - teacher - want

Ahmed : What do you (1) .... to be ?

Hamed : I want to be a (2) ....

Ahmed : Is being a teacher an important (3) .... ?

Hamed : Yes. A teacher can change their students' lives.

C. Vocabulary and structures

▸ **Choose the correct answer.**

1. A .... works in the tourism industry.
   a. guide b. fisherman c. librarian
2. Electricity can be .... It can burn us.
   a. easy b. dangerous c. safe
3. .... worry. I will help you.
   a. Didn't b. Don't c. Doesn't
4. We .... the sound of the engine.
   a. grow b. heard c. drove
5. I'm sorry because I .... my parents.
   a. disobeyed b. disappeared c. disagree

(_) (_)

GENERAL REVISION on Units 4,5 & 6

I Vocabulary

Unit 4

kitchen	مطبخ	apartment	شقة سكنية	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
bedroom	حجرة نوم	office	مكتب	post office	مكتب بريد
living room	حجرة معيشة	houseboat	منزل عائم	van	شاحنة
hospital	مستشفى	tent	خيمة	vegetables	خضروات
balcony	بلكونة / شرفة	face	وجه	fan	مروحة
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	village	قرية	houseboat	منزل عائم

Unit 5

bus driver	سائق حافلة	plug	قابس كهربي	repair shop	ورشة إصلاح
garbage collector	جامع قمامة	electrician	كهربائي	dentist	طبيب أسنان
		tape measure	شريط قياس	doctor	طبيب
mail carrier	ساعي البريد	socket	مقبس	teacher	معلم
cleaner	عامل نظافة	blocks	مكعبات	architect	مهندس
mechanic	ميكانيكي	screwdriver	مفك براغي	parcel	طرد

Unit 6

tourism	السياحة	fisherman	صياد	engine	محرك
farmer	فلاح	cut down	يقطع	disappointed	محبط
teacher	معلم	van	شاحنة	lovely	رائع
education	التعليم	fresh	طازج	shout	يصرخ
guide	مرشد	sound	صوت	patient	صبور
librarian	أمين مكتبة	surprised	مندهش	restaurant	مطعم



Language Focus

Unit 4

Prepositions of place



in front of أمام



on على



behind خلف



in في



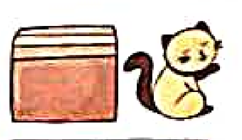
above أعلى



under تحت



between بين



next to بجانب

Unit 5

Demonstrative Pronouns

Near

- **This** هذا [للمفرد القريب]

This is my pen.





- **These** هؤلاء [للجمع القريب]

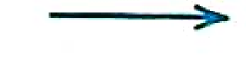
These are my books.



Far

- **That** تلك [للمفرد البعيد]

That is my pen



- **Those** هؤلاء [للجمع البعيد]

Those are my books.



Unit 6

The prefix "dis-" البادئة "dis -"

The prefix "dis-" means "not" البادئة "dis -" تعني "ليس"

- obey ▸ disobey
- agree ▸ disagree
- appear ▸ disappear
- like ▸ dislike

(_) (_)

Monthly Assessments | October Test

اختبار شهر أكتوبر

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The fennec fox lives in the sea. ☐
2. It's smaller than other foxes. ☐
3. It eats other foxes. ☐
4. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Camels are .... than horses.
   a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the big
2. Salma is .... like her mother.
   a. beauty b. beautiful c. as beauty d. more beauty
3. We .... chickens in Egypt.
   a. raise b. rain c. train d. grain
4. The .... is a person who is like a king.
   a. teacher b. farmer c. vet d. emperor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

germination - grows - above - under

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant (1) .... That is called (2) .... We water the plant every day, and the roots grow (3) .... the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)		(B)
1. Rhim gazelles have	☐	a. seeds inside.
2. The crocodile is	☐	b. an emperor lives.
3. Tomatoes have	☐	c. plants live.
4. A palace is where	☐	d. strong and scary.
	☐	e. long horns.

( ) ( )

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Plants near the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert, so we can find acacia plant and tamarisk there.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Lotus flowers and reed grow near the ....
   a. deserts b. rivers c. streets d. roads
2. Orange trees grow in the .... habitat.
   a. desert b. oasis c. agricultural d. lake

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do farmers grow in the agricultural habitat ?

....

4. What plants can we find in the desert ?

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. big – has – The – fox – fennec – ears.

....

2. perfect – are – Camels – for – desert – the.

....

3. green – Why – tomatoes – are ?

....

7 Punctuate the following.

spiders are very helpful

....

8 Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR [24] words using the guiding elements.

"Camels"

Guiding elements :

- without water
- flat feet

....

....

....

Monthly Assessments | November Test

اختبار شهر نوفمبر

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zain lives in a town. ☐
2. Zain lives in a house. ☐
3. Zain lives with his grandma. ☐
4. There are tall trees behind Zain's house. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The park is .... the bank and the shopping mall.
   a. next b. behind c. between d. in front
2. I can see the whole street from the ....
   a. living room b. bathroom c. balcony d. kitchen
3. I like to watch the .... of lightning in the sky.
   a. smell b. smoke c. flash d. sound
4. She always .... a pencil when she was young.
   a. carry b. carrying c. carried d. to carry

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

meets - tourists - stores - travels

Ahmed likes the summer very much. His parents work on tourist boats. He (1) .... up and down the Nile with them. He sees many interesting places. He (2) .... people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the (3) ....

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The school is a place	☐ a. where we go when we are sick.
2. The hospital is a place	☐ b. takes the children to school.
3. A bus driver	☐ c. a plumber.
4. I love being	☐ d. where I learn.
	☐ e. things work.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do.

There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Mariam lives in a ....
   a. city b. desert c. village d. countryside
2. Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt.
   a. north b. south c. east d. west

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many people live in Hurghada ?

....

4. Where is Sahl Hasheesh ?

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the park – to – next – My – is – school.

....

2. a bus – I – to – want – be – driver.

....

3. it – to – easy – Is – be – electrician – an ?

....

7 Punctuate the following.

what do you like to be

....

8 Write an email of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words to your friend Ali about your favorite job. Your name is Yasser and your email address is yasser@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com.

New Message

To :

From :

Subject :

.... ,

....

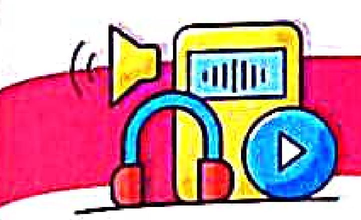
....

....

....

....





Listening Texts | نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Unit 1

Lesson 3 :

Plants are living things. Some plants are big and some are small. Plants need soil, water, and air to grow. We need to take care of plants.

Test 1 on Unit 1 :

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. It is good for growing crops. Farmers grow rice, potatoes and wheat. Fishermen catch thousands of fish. In Damietta, there are goats, cows and sheep, too.

Test 2 on Unit 1 :

Farmers are very important for us. They produce a lot of food for us to eat. They also grow vegetables like tomatoes and onions. They grow fruits like watermelons and bananas. They can raise chicken to get eggs and meat.

Stop Here Unit 1 : تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seeds in the soil and gave them water. But nothing happened because the seeds were dead.



Unit 2

Lesson 2 :

Camels are beautiful, strong animals. They help us carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes.

Lesson 3 : "Pop Quiz on phonics"

1. Listen and write the missing sound.

1. bear 2. peas 3. pear
4. pelican 5. pin 6. bird

2. Listen and circle.

1. bear 2. pin 3. peas

Lesson 3 :

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are hungry. They saw a juicy fish. The pelican wants to take it. The bear is surprised and angry. The pelican looks scared. The pelican says sadly, "I'm sorry." The bear is bigger and stronger.

Test 3 on Unit 2 :

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. It needs big ears to hear insects. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.

Test 4 on Unit 2 :

The crocodile is huge and scary. Spiders are very helpful. Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous. They eat insects, birds and lizards.

Stop Here Unit 2 : تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live in the desert.

Unit 3

Lesson 1 :

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. Tomatoes are green before they are red. That is called germination.

Lesson 3 :

I'm Waleed. I live on a farm with mom and dad. We plant millions of seeds. We use the Nile to water the seeds. We grow many fruits like oranges and lemons.

Test 5 on Unit 3 :

There are many plant habitats. In agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat. They plant bean plants and orange trees. There are plants that grow near rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed. They need a lot of water to grow.

Test 6 on Unit 3 :

We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs sunlight and water to grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

Stop Here Unit 3 : تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

General Exercises on Units 1,2 &3 :

I love animals. Crocodiles are huge and scary. The crocodiles control the number of small animals. Farmers like spiders because they are very helpful. They eat insects.



Lesson 2 :

There are two beds in my bedroom. There are two chairs and a table. The table is between the two beds. There is a book on the table.

Lesson 3 [Part 1] :

I'm Reem. I live in a small village. My school is next to the hospital. Behind the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends.

Lessons 4 & 5 :

I'm Reham. I live in Hurghada. Hurghada has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars. There is the Sahara Desert in Hurghada. Lots of tourists go on safaris there.

Test 7 on Unit 4 :

Noha works at a shopping mall near her house. She sells clothes and shoes. She is very kind and helpful.

Test 8 on Unit 4 :

Ali is my friend. He likes going to the sea. In summer, Ali lives on a boat with his parents. His parents work on a tourist boat. Ali always goes with them. Ali's parents travel up and down the Nile.

Stop Here Unit 4 : تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. My house is not the biggest in the village. It's between a yellow house and a brown house.

Unit 5

Lesson 3 : "Pop Quiz on pronunciation"

1. plumber 2. teacher 3. mechanic
4. driver 5. doctor

Lessons 4&5 :

All the jobs are very important. The cleaners keep the school clean. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights. The mechanic fixes the school buses.

Test 9 on Unit 5 :

When Talia was young, she played with blocks. She made a little house for her little dog. Now, she's an architect. She always carries a tape measure.

Test 10 on Unit 5 :

A bus driver takes the children to school. A mechanic fixes the buses. A plumber fixes the pipes and faucets. A garbage collector takes away the garbage.

Stop Here Unit 5 : تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

A plumber fixes the pipes and faucets. An electrician connects the electricity. They do important work for us.



Lesson 1 :

I am a fisherman. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market.

Lesson 3 :

There's an old fisherman in my village. He sells fish. He likes his job. We buy fish from him. He always has fresh fish.

Test 11 on Unit 6 :

My uncle is good at looking after the plants. My uncle grows oranges. All the year, he looks after the trees. Then in October, he sends the fruit to the factory to make orange juice.

Test 12 on Unit 6 :

I am a fisherman. I work on the sea. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market.

Stop Here Unit 6 : تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

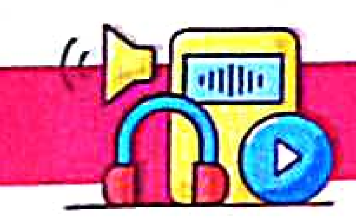
I want to be a librarian. I work in a school library. I look after all the books. I buy lots of new books. I help children find the information they need.

October assessment :

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. It's 20 centimeters tall. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.

November assessment :

My name's Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.



Answers of Topics | إجابات الموضوعات الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Unit 1

General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

"Food in Egypt"

Egyptian farmers produce many things. They grow a lot of food for us to eat. They grow rice. They grow vegetables and fruits. They raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

From : ali@yahoo.com

To : ahmed@yahoo.com

Subject : Healthy food

Dear Ahmed,

How are you ? I like healthy food. I like fruits and vegetables. I don't like unhealthy food. I don't eat candy. Do you think you are healthy ? Write me soon.

Yours,

Ali

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

"Damietta governorate"

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes and guavas. Fishermen can catch a lot of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta.

Test 1 on Unit 1 :

"Being healthy"

To be healthy, I drink plenty of water. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. I do a lot of exercise. I also play basketball. I like walking. I don't eat a lot of candy.

Test 2 on Unit 1 :

"Egyptian farmers"

Egyptian farmers are very important. They grow many crops like rice. They grow fruit and vegetables for us to eat. They also keep animals. They raise chickens to get eggs and meat. It's a very important job.



Unit 2

General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

"Crocodiles and snakes"

Crocodiles and snakes are very dangerous. But they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

"The horses"

Horses are strong animals. They can live in the desert. They have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses are my favorite animals.

General Exercises on Lesson 3 :

"The bears"

I like animals. My favorite animal is the bear. Bears eat fish. They use paws and claws to catch fish. My sister doesn't like bears. She thinks they are scary.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

From : adam@yahoo.com

To : sami@yahoo.com

Subject : rhim gazelles

Dear Sami,

How are you ? I want to tell you some facts about rhim gazelles. They look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They have big ears and long horns. They don't need to drink a lot of water.

See you soon!

Yours,

Adam

Test 3 on Unit 2 :

"Camels"

Camels have large, flat feet. They help us to carry things. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels can live without water for a long time.

Test 4 on Unit 2 :

"The fennec fox"

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It has big ears. It can hear insects. It has thick fur to be warm at night.



General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

"How to grow tomatoes"

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. This is called germination. We water the plant every day. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

From : fares@gmail.com

To : nour@gmail.com

Subject : Desert habitat

Dear Nour,

How are you ? I want to tell you about the desert habitat. There isn't much rain in the desert. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water. It's very hot in the desert.

Write me soon!

Yours,

Fares

General Exercises on Lesson 3 :

"Life on a farm"

I live on a farm with my family. We use plants to make the land green. We bring animals to the land. We use rainwater to water the seeds. I like the farm because it's quiet and beautiful. There are a lot of fruits and vegetables on the farm.
I can also play with animals on the farm.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

"The life cycle of a tomato"

First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

Test 5 on Unit 3 :

"Agricultural habitat"

Farmers work in an agricultural habitat. They look after the trees. They grow plants like bean plants and orange trees. They sell some oranges to the supermarket. People need these plants to eat.

Test 6 on Unit 3 :

"The life cycle of the sunflower"

First, we plant a sunflower seed in soil. Next, the seed germinates and starts to grow. It grows leaves. After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun. Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

General Exercises on units 1,2&3 :

"Rhim gazelles"

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They eat grass and plants. They have big ears and long horns. They don't need to drink a lot of water like camels.



General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

"Your home"

I live in an apartment with my family. I like my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I love my apartment.

General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

"Your village"

I live in a village near the Nile. I live in a house with my family. It's between a yellow house and a brown house. There are a lot of trees. I can play with animals. The village is quiet and beautiful.

General Exercises on Lesson 3 (Part 1) :

From : hany@school.com

To : ali@school.com

Subject : The directions to my house

Dear Ali,

How are you ? I want to tell you about the directions to my house. From the corner of Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is next to the school.

See you soon !

Yours,

Hany

General Exercises on Lesson 3 (Part 2) :

"Living on a boat"

We live on a boat in the summer. My parents work on tourist boats. They travel up and down the Nile. I see many interesting places. I meet people from all over the world. I like the summer very much.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

"Hurghada"

I live in Hurghada. It's on the Red Sea. There's a beach there. Tourists can go on safaris. It has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the South of Hurghada.

Test 7 on Unit 4 :

"Your town"

This is my town. It's small, but it has stores, offices and many other places. My school is next to the hospital. Next to the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends. It's a good place to live in.

Test 8 on Unit 4 :

"Your favorite room"

I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I talk with my family and do many things in the living room.

Unit 5

General Exercises on Lesson 1:

"Different jobs"

There are many different jobs.
An electrician connects the electricity.
A garbage collector takes away all the garbage to keep our house clean.
A plumber connects the pipes and faucets.
A mail carrier delivers letters and parcels.

General Exercises on Lesson 2:

"Electricity"

Electricity is very dangerous. You can get an electric shock. To use electricity safely, never touch anything with wet hands. Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical.

General Exercises on Lesson 3:

"A job I want to do"

My favorite job is an electrician. It's an important job. An electrician connects electricity so people can use lights and watch TV. We should learn about safety with electricity.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5:

"Pros and cons of the mail carrier's job"

There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. On the one hand, he walks all the day and gets a lot of exercise. On the other hand, the mail bag is very heavy. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job.

Test 9 on Unit 5 :

"Mechanics"

My favorite job is a mechanic. The mechanics work in the repair shop. They fix the cars and buses. The mechanic's job is very important. The mechanic is fixing my dad's car. He is clever.

Test 10 on Unit 5 :

From : yasser@gmail.com
To : ali.@gmail.com
Subject : My father's job
Dear Ali,

How are you ? I write this email to tell you about my father's job. He is an electrician. He always carries a screwdriver. He connects electricity. I want to be an electrician like my father. See you soon !

Yours,
Yasser



General Exercises on Lesson 1:

From : sara@yahoo.com
To : noha@gmail.com
Subject : Different jobs
Dear Noha,

How are you ? There are a lot of different jobs. Fishermen go out on a boat and catch fish. Farmers look after the crops. Librarians work at a school. What's your favorite job ? Write me soon.

Yours,
Sara

Test 11 on Unit 6 :

"A fisherman"

A fisherman wakes up early every day. He goes out on his boat. He catches fish. He sells the fish at the market. It's my favorite job. It's a very interesting job.

Test 12 on Unit 6 :

"The farmer"

My uncle is a farmer. He grows fruits and vegetables. He looks after the trees. He sells the crops at the market. He sends a lot of the fruits to the factory to make juice.



Final Revision

By a group of supervisors

طـــبقًا لنـواتـــج التعـــلم

المعـــاصـر فـى
اللغـــة الإنجــليزية
المـراجـعة النــهائية
للصــف الرابـع الابتـدائى
الفصــل الدراســى الأول

mr.salah abdelsalam

CONNECT

DESERT

DESERT ANIMALS

4th
Primary
2022
FIRST TERM

دلـيل ولـى الأمـر
PARENTS' GUIDE

CONTENTS

PART 1

* " That's Enough" is enough before the exam.
* جزء للمراجعة على المنهج بالكامل بطريقة كافية ووافية وسريعة طبقًا لنواتج التعلّم.
* Important paragraphs.
* اهم الموضوعات الإنشائية التى وردت بالمنهج.

PART 2

Accumulative Assessments. تقييمات تراكمية.

PART 3

* 15 Sample Tests.
* ١٥ نموذج اختبار على المنهج بالكامل طبقًا لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢١ - ٢٠٢٢.
* Listening Texts.
* نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالتدريبات والاختبارات.

Specifications for Fourth Year Primary (1st Term) English Examination (2021 - 2022)

مواصفات ورقة امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الرابع الإبتدائي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢١ / ٢٠٢٢

Time : One Hour and a Half   2021 / 2022   30 Marks

A Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ) *(8 Marks)*

A listening text of about **FORTY (40)** words followed by **FOUR (4)** separate sentences is provided. Learners are asked to write T (True) or F (False) for each sentence based on what they have heard. *(2 marks each)*

B Reading (11 Marks)

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: *(3 Marks)*

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

An unseen text from **50** to **60** words with **THREE (3)** deletions. A list of **FOUR (4)** separate words related to vocabulary is also given. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with one of the **FOUR (4)** words given in the box. The first sentence should be written in full. *(1 mark each)*

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B) *(4 Marks)*

FOUR (4) premises in column **(A)** and **FIVE (5)** responses in column **(B)** are provided. Learners are asked to match each premise with its suitable response. The items can be jobs and descriptions, sentence halves, words and definitions.....etc. *(1 mark each)*

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة *(4 Marks)*

An unseen literary or informational text of not less than **70** to **80** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary four. Learners are asked to answer:

A. **TWO (2) MCQ** questions with **FOUR (4)** options each dealing with **TWO** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

B. TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with **TWO** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text. *(One mark each)*



5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: *(6 Marks)*

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

THREE (3) scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form a correct sentence or question. *(2 marks each)*

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى *(1 Mark)*

A simple statement (sentence or question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks is provided **(Capital Letter / Full Stop/ Question Mark/ Exclamation Mark/ Comma)**. Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. *(Half a mark each)*

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة أنشائيه من (١٨) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر المرشدة *(4 Marks)*

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than **EIGHTEEN (18)** words using **TWO** given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file.....etc.

(One mark for relevance of ideas and vocabulary- One mark for grammar - One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)


Part
1
" That's Enough"
is enough before the exam.
المراجعة على المنهج بالكامل
بطريقة كافية ووافية وسريعة.

Review on Unit 1



Vocabulary

watermelon	بطيخة	chicken	دجاجة
sugarcane	قصب السكر	grapes	عنب
rice	أرز	mangoes	مانجو
potatoes	بطاطس	milk	لبن
onions	بصل	lungs	الرئتين
esophagus	المرئ	nose	أنف
stomach	معدة	diaphragm	الحجاب الحاجز
mouth	فم	raise	يربى
large intestine	الأمعاء الغليظة	produce	ينتج
small intestine	الأمعاء الدقيقة	grow	يزرع
bananas	موز	delicious	لذيذ
drink cola	يشرب مياه غازية	play football	يلعب كرة القدم
burger	برجر	play basketball	يلعب كرة السلة
eat candy	يأكل الحلوى	do homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلى
burn	حرق / يحترق	sprain	يلتوى - إلتواء
scrape	خدش	cough	يكح / يسعل
band-aid	ضمادة طبية (للجروح)	back	ظهر
tea	شاى	gloves	قفازات
honey	عسل	cookies	كعك محلى
oats	شوفان	flapjack	فطيرة / كعك محلى (بريطانى) - فطيرة الشوفان
ingredients	مكونات - مقادير	apartment	شقة سكنية
land	أرض	famous	مشهور
governorate	محافظة	life	حياة
catch	يصطاد	farmer	فلاح



Short vowel


bag


mix


mom

Long vowel


cake


rice


nose

Language

1 A conjunction : is a word that joins words and sentences.

أداة الربط هى كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل معًا.

1 We use (and) to add two ideas together. ١. نستخدم (and) عند إضافة فكرتين معًا.

and و

EX.: I play basketball **and** I play football in the park.



2 We use (but) to show contrast. ٢. نستخدم (but) عند توضيح التناقض.



EX.: I love burgers **, but** I only eat one a week.



2 The prefix "re" البادئة "re"

(re) is a prefix that can be added at the beginning of the verb and give the meaning of "again".

(re) هى بادئة يمكن أن تضاف فى بداية الفعل وتعطى معنى (مرة ثانية).

do → redo   clean → reclean

EX.:

She redid her homework. = She did her homework again.

General Exercises on Unit 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

	T	F
1. The food looks delicious.		
2. My dad made special food for us.		
3. Egyptian farmers produce many fruits.		
4. We don't grow rice in Egypt.		

B

	T	F
1. The oxygen goes from the air into our blood.		
2. We need carbon dioxide in our bodies.		
3. The diaphragm pushes air with oxygen out of our lungs.		
4. Our heart pumps blood around our body.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

esophagus - blood - diaphragm - oxygen

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We need (1) .... in our bodies. We breathe in air through our nose. The (2) .... goes down and pulls air into our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen from the air goes into our (3) .... Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

B

yummy - hot - good - scientist

My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a (1)............... and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very (2)............... sometimes. I only drink water because I don't like cola. My mum makes (3)............... salads. I think I'm healthy.

C

cheese - fishermen - Life - farmers

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The (1) .... can grow rice, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati (2)............... is very delicious. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. (3)............... is good in Damietta!

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)



1. Farmers produce
2. The esophagus goes from
3. When we breathe,
4. The large intestine is



- [ ] a. the mouth to the stomach.
- [ ] b. we take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.
- [ ] c. vegetables like onions.
- [ ] d. around the small intestine.
- [ ] e. under the lungs.

(B)

A		B
1. Stay away		a. and nutrients in our body.
2. We chew food		b. plenty of water.
3. We need the energy		c. with our teeth.
4. I drink		d. from smoke.
		e. special food for us.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. produce – in Egypt – What – we – foods – do ?

....

2. large – removes – The – waste – intestine.

....

3. you – are – Do – healthy – you – think ?

....

(B)

1. is – Damietta – Life – good – in.

....

2. the oxygen – Where – from – the air – does – go ?

....

3. a – What – idea – great !

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

How can we have a healthy respiratory system ?

Guiding words :

- stay away
- smoke

....

....

....

....

(B)

How can we help someone who falls over and cuts their leg ?

Guiding words :

- kind
- band-aid

....

....

....

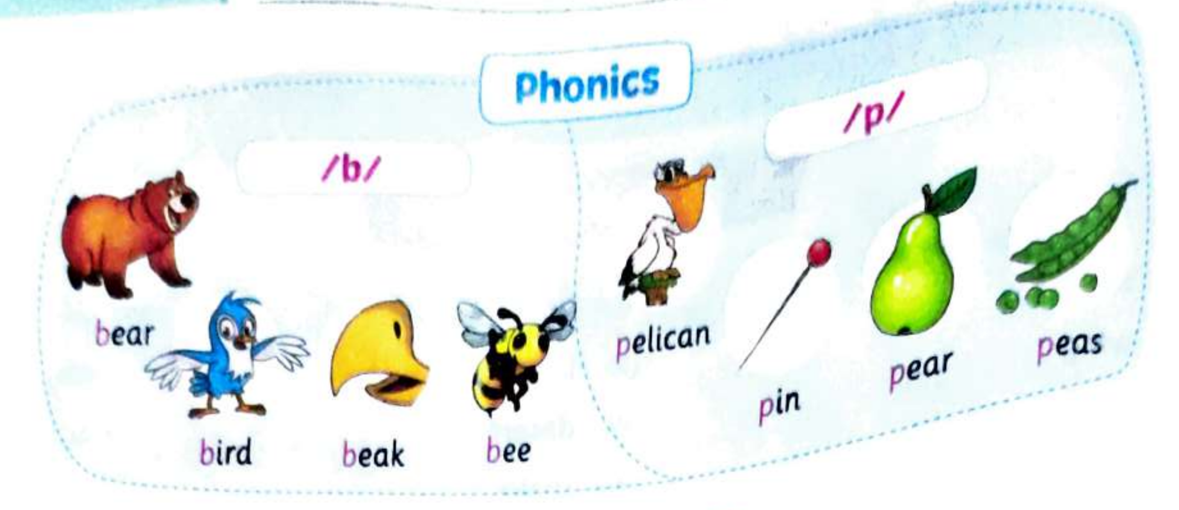
....

Review on Unit 2



Vocabulary

fur	فراء - فرو	ugly	قبيح المنظر
feathers	ريش	important	هام
wing	جناح	desert	صحراء
beak	منقار	snake	ثعبان
huge	ضخم	camel	جمل
eagle	نسر	spider	عنكبوت
pelican	بجعة	crocodile	تمساح
lizard	سحلية	helpful	متعاون - مفيد
fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك	sand	رمال
scary	مخيف	female	أنثى
How tall/long ... ?	كم الطول ... ؟	male	ذكر
How heavy ... ?	كم الوزن ... ؟	mammals	ثدييات
open areas	مناطق مفتوحة	flat feet	أقدام مسطحة / مستوية
amazing	مدهش	strong	قوى
beautiful	جميل	noisy	مزعج - ملىء بالضوضاء
perfect	مثالى	hump	سنام الجمل (ظهر الجمل)
large	كبير (الحجم)	fresh water	ماء عذب
grass	عشب (حشائش)	bear	دُب
paw	كف (قدم حيوان)	scared	خائف
claw	مخلب (حيوان/ طائر)	shout	يصيح / يصرخ
insect	حشرة	whisper	يهمس
juicy	كثير العصارة	naked mole rat	فأر الخلد العارى (بدون شعر)
rhim gazelles	غزال الريم	temperature	درجة حرارة
hoof (hooves)	حافر (حوافر)	coat	فراء حيوان (غطاء جسم الحيوان)
horns	قرون	dangerous	خطير
control	يتحكم		



Language

Comparative
صيغة المقارنة

Comparative : is to compare between two things / people in an adjective. صيغة المقارنة : هى المقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين فى صفة ما.

A. Short adjectives : Adjectives that have one syllable.
الصفات القصيرة: هى صفات مكونة من مقطع واحد.

short adj. + er + than.....

EX.: - The elephant is bigger than the lion.
- The new dress is nicer than the old one.

B. Long adjectives : Adjectives that have two or more syllables.
الصفات الطويلة : هى صفات مكونة من مقطعين أو أكثر.

more + long adj. + than .....

EX.: - Horses are more beautiful than camels.
- Camels are more useful than horses.

General Exercises on Unit 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

	T	F
1. Rhim gazelles live near the sea.		
2. Rhim gazelles have yellow - white coats.		
3. Rhim gazelles have short horns.		
4. Rhim gazelles eat plants and leaves.		

B

	T	F
1. A pelican and a bear are very hungry.		
2. The bear reaches for the fish.		
3. The pelican lifts its paw.		
4. The bear opens its beak.		



Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

female - mammals - lives - travels

The steppe eagle lives around 30-40 years. It weighs around 3 kilograms. It (1)................ from Europe to Africa in winter. It lives in very big, open areas. It eats other birds, small (2)................ and rabbits. When it opens its wings , it's longer than you! The (3)................ is bigger and heavier than the male.

Part 1

B

water - sand - clothes - carry

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to (1)................ things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make (2)................ ! Camels are perfect for the desert. They can live without (3)................ for a long time.

C

Scientists - ill - temperature - cute

The naked mole rat lives in eastern Africa. It has big teeth and no hair. It can't control its body (1)................ because it has no hair. It doesn't get (2)................ . It lives for a very long time. (3) .... want to learn all about naked mole rats. They're not cute animals, but they are amazing!

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)



1. The fennec fox lives
2. The female eagle is
3. Rhim gazelles have
4. Camels are very noisy

B

- ☐ a. bigger than the male.
- ☐ b. hooves on their feet.
- ☐ c. in the sea.
- ☐ d. and they can get angry.
- ☐ e. in the desert.

(B)

A		B
1. Horses have		a. doesn't get ill.
2. The naked mole rat		b. than the pelican.
3. The bear is stronger		c. lifts its paw.
4. Camels can live		d. without water for a long time.
		e. large, beautiful eyes.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. scary – are – Which – animals ?

....

2. to – grass – Horses – eat – like.

....

3. a camel – live – does – How – long ?

....

(B)

1. perfect – Camels – for – are – desert – the.

....

2. the bear – angry – Why – look – does ?

....

3. have – gazelles – Rhim – horns – long.

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

Scary animals

Guiding words :

- crocodile
- dangerous

(B)

Camels

Guiding words :

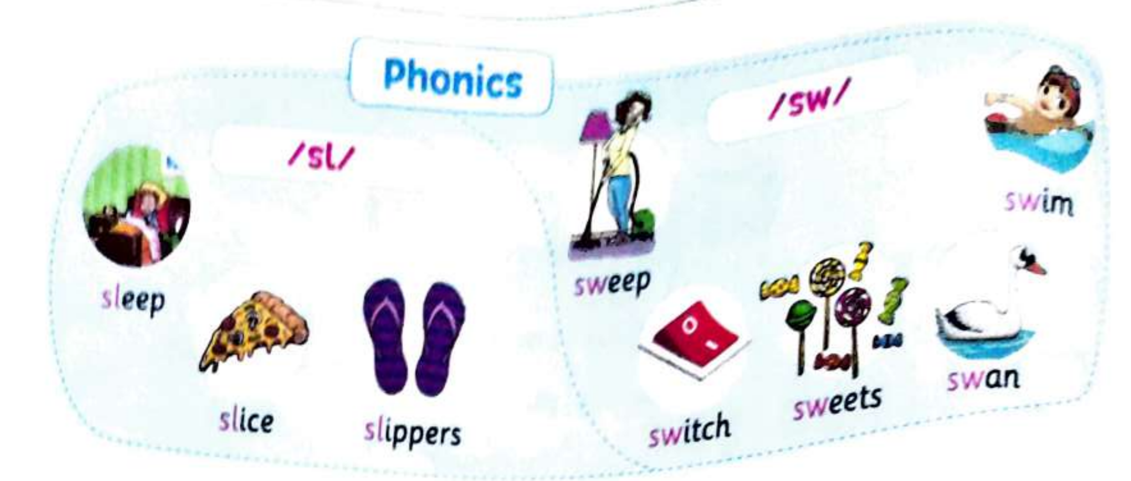
- strong
- carry

Review on Unit 3





soil	تربة	inside	داخل
leaf	ورقة شجر	plants	نباتات
roots	جذور	sunflower	زهرة عباد الشمس
shoot	برعم - نبتة	rose	وردة
seeds	بذور	bean plant	نبات الفول
germination process	عملية الإنبات	reed	عود الخيزران
lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس	daisy	زهرة الأقحوان
acacia	شجرة السنط	orange tree	شجرة البرتقال
agricultural	زراعي	tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء
habitat	موطن - بيئة	stick	يلصق
chloroplasts	البلاستيدات الخضراء	float	يطفو
microscope	مجهر (ميكروسكوب)	polluted	ملوث
carbon dioxide	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون	air	هواء
pollen	حبوب اللقاح	cell	خلية
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	wind	رياح
a billion	بليون - مليار (١٠٠٠ مليون)	travel away	ينتقل بعيدًا
dry	جاف	noise	ضوضاء
rainwater	مياه الأمطار	suitcase	حقيبة السفر
papyrus	نبات البردى	life stages	مراحل الحياة
Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	sandals	صندل
germinate	ينبت	basket	سلة
The Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	finally	أخيرًا



Language

1 Superlative adjectives صفات صيغة التفضيل

Usage : We use superlative adjectives to compare between three or more things. نستخدم صفات صيغة التفضيل عند المقارنة بين ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر.

Formation التكوين

A. Short adjectives : add "-est" at the end of the adjective

the + short adj. صفة قصيرة + est

EX.: The elephant is the biggest land animal.

B. Long adjectives : use "the most"

the most + long adj. صفة طويلة

EX.: The lion is the most dangerous animal.

2 The suffix "-ful" :

The suffix : is a letter or a group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word.
اللاحقة هى إضافة حرف أو مجموعة من الأحرف فى نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

Learn : "-ful " is a suffix meaning " full of " (-ful) هى لاحقة تعنى (مليئة بـ)

EX.: She's a helpful girl.

General Exercises on Unit 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

	T	F
1. Green plants take oxygen from the air.		
2. The plants produce oxygen.		
3. The plant cells need oxygen to make food for the plant.		
4. Plants give us oxygen to breathe.		

B

	T	F
1. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called germination.		
2. We water the plant every day.		
3. The roots grow above the soil.		
4. Tomatoes have shoots inside.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :



roots - shoot - sunlight - plant

The germination process starts when we put a seed in soil. The seed needs (1)............... and water, so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then, it grows a (2)............... and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full (3)............... grows leaves and flowers. A plant produces pollen in a flower.

B

pollen – sunlight – cells – Chloroplasts

A plant is made of millions of cells. The plant (1) .... are very small. (2) .... make the plant green. You can only see them with a microscope. The green plant cells make food for the plant. They use (3) ...., carbon dioxide and water.

C

cells - carbon dioxide - breathe - eat

In big cities, the air is polluted because of factories and cars. There is a lot of (1) .... in the air. Green plants take carbon dioxide from the air. The plant (2) .... need carbon dioxide to make food for the plants. The plants also produce oxygen. Plants in our houses and parks give us oxygen to (3) ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)

A		B
1. Oxygen is a gas	•	☐ a. above the soil.
2. The root grows	•	☐ b. under the soil.
3. Some seeds can	•	☐ c. stick to an animal's fur.
4. Tomatoes have	•	☐ d. seeds inside.
		☐ e. in the air that people need to breathe.

(B)



B

1. There is a lot of •
2. Chloroplasts make •
3. Papyrus needs •
4. The rose is •

☐ a. the plant green.
☐ b. warm weather to grow.
☐ c. and faces the sun.
☐ d. taller than the daisy.
☐ e. carbon dioxide in the air.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. green – the – Why – tomatoes – are ?

....

2. cell – or – Is – big – small – a plant ?

....

3. grow – for – Farmers – food – to eat – us.

....

(B)

1. move – the – Seeds – wind – can – in.

....

2. see – Can – the leaves – you – the flowers – and ?

....

3. grow – farmers – sunflowers – Why – do ?

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

A plant cell

Guiding words :

- microscope
- chloroplasts

....

....

....

....

(B)

The life stages of a sunflower

Guiding words :

- soil
- germinate

....

....

....

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

A plant cell

Guiding words :

- microscope
- chloroplasts

(B)

The life stages of a sunflower

Guiding words :

- soil
- germinate

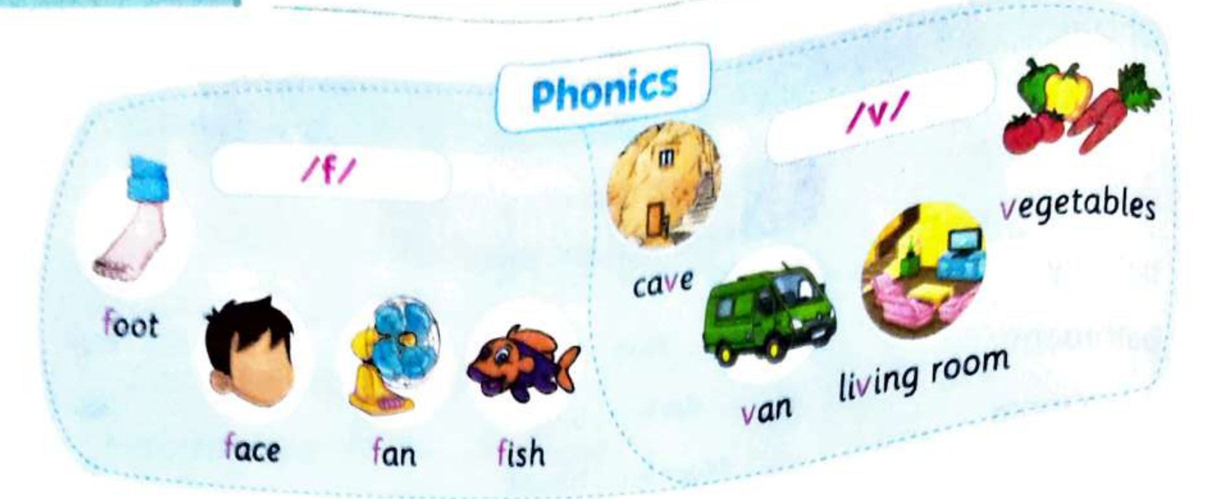
Review on Unit 4





balcony	شرفة	couch	أريكة / كنبة
bathroom	دورة مياه	tent	خيمة
living room	حجرة معيشة	house	منزل
dining room	حجرة الطعام	houseboat	عوّامة
kitchen	مطبخ	cave	كهف
bedroom	حجرة نوم	hospital	مستشفى
post office	مكتب بريد	supermarket	سوبر ماركت
school	مدرسة	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
museum	متحف	sick	مريض
cloth	قماش	send letters	يرسل خطابات
store	متجر	town	مدينة صغيرة
place	مكان	south	جنوب
sports club	نادي رياضي	Take the second right.	خذ المنعطف ثاني يمين.
station	محطة	It's on the corner.	إنه في الزاوية.
Turn right.	اتجه يمينًا.	bazaar	بازار (سوق تجارى)
Turn left.	اتجه يسارًا.	safaris	رحلات سفارى
beach	شاطئ	restaurant	مطعم
upside down	مقلوب - رأسًا على عقب	Brighton Pier	رصيف ميناء برايتون
the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	worker	عامل
Sahl Hasheesh	سهل حشيش(فى الغردقة)	kind	طيب / عطوف
tourist	سائح	fresh	طازج
check	يفحص / يتحقق	lovely	جميل - محبوب





Language

Prepositions of place : حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Prepositions of place

- in front of
- on
- in
- under
- above
- next to
- between
- behind

General Exercises on Unit 4



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

	T	F
1. My favorite room is the living room without the balcony.		
2. I love to sit in the balcony.		
3. My mother doesn't like the balcony.		
4. I can't see the street from the balcony.		

B

	T	F
1. There are lots of interesting things to do in Hurghada.		
2. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.		
3. Sahl Hasheesh is in the north of Hurghada.		
4. Sahl Hasheesh has interesting bazaars.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

watch - apartment - balcony - relax

My name's Sara. I live in an (1)................ . My favorite room is the bedroom where I can relax and do my homework quietly. I talk to my family and (2)................ TV in the living room. I love to sit in the (3)................ where I can see the people in the street.

Part 1

B

beach - tourists - rides - live

Brighton is a small city in the south of England. About 200,000 people (1)............ there. There's a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. Lots of (2)............ come to Brighton to go to the beach. There are many games and (3)............ for children there. We also have a very unusual house in Brighton.

C

biggest - family - village - Nile

My cousin's name is Hamza. He lives in a small (1)............. It is next to the (2)............. He lives in a big house with his family. Their house is the (3)............ in the village. It is between a red house and a yellow house. There are tall trees behind their house.

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)

A

1. I live in a city
2. My favorite room
3. The supermarket is
4. People in the desert



- [ ] a. we buy food.
- [ ] b. live in a tent.
- [ ] c. a place where we buy food.
- [ ] d. called Hurghada.
- [ ] e. is the living room.



(B)



A	B
1. The school	a. I see her every week.
2. Where's the post office ?	b. Go straight ahead. It's on the corner.
3. She helps us when	c. is a place where we learn.
4. The tent in the desert is	d. made of cloth.
	e. we can't find something.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. room – your – is – Which – favorite ?

....

2. bedroom – sleep – the – in – I.

....

3. the – is – Where – office – post ?

....

(B)

1. shower – bathroom – I – a – take – in the.

....

2. in front of – the – office – My dad's – is – park.

....

3. in – lives – She – apartment – an.

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

Your town

Guiding words :

- stores
- school

(B)

A cave

Guiding words :

- rooms
- rock

Review on Unit 5





electrician	كهربائى	plumber	سباك
mechanic	ميكانيكى	bus driver	سائق حافلة
builder	عامل بناء	mail carrier	ساعى البريد
garbage collector	جامع قمامة	faucet	صنبور
wall	حائط	deliver	يوصل / يسلم
safe	آمن	letter	خطاب
electricity	كهرباء	packages	طرود بريدية
lights	أضواء	plug	قابس (فيشة)
pipe	ماسورة	unplug	ينتزع القابس الكهربائى (يفصل)
lightning	ظاهرة البرق	safety	أمان
practice	يتدرب / يمارس	broken wire	سلك مكسور (مكشوف)
electric shock	صدمة كهربائية	storm	عاصفة
socket	مقبس كهرباء	repair shop	ورشة إصلاحات
community	مجتمع	local home	منزل محلى/داخل المدينة
skills	مهارات	hard hats	قبعات صلبه
businesses	مؤسسات تجارية	disadvantages	عيوب
advantages	مميزات	patient	صبور
screwdriver	مفك البراغى	architect	مهندس معمارى
tape measure	شريط القياس	teacher	معلم
blocks	مكعبات	curious	فضولى - محب للاستطلاع
experiment	تجربة	backache	ألم بالظهر
pros	إيجابيات - مزايا	mail bag	حقيبة البريد
cons	سلبيات - عيوب	cell phone	هاتف محمول
weather	طقس	workers	عُمال

Phonics

Two - syllable words




builder



doctor

Three - syllable words



architect

Four - syllable words



electrician

Language

Demonstrative pronouns : ضمائر الإشارة :

Demonstrative pronouns are : "this, that, these and those".

Usage : To show how close an object is to the speaker.

الاستخدام : لتوضيح مدى قرب الشيء للمتحدث.

Singular المفرد

This	is	near to the speaker تستخدم بمعني هذا /هذه (للإشارة للمفرد القريب).
That		far from the speaker تستخدم بمعني ذلك /تلك (للإشارة للمفرد البعيد).

EX.: - This mechanic works in the repair shop.
- That mail carrier is delivering the packages.

Plural الجمع

These	are	near to the speaker تستخدم بمعني هؤلاء (للإشارة للجمع القريب).
Those		far from the speaker تستخدم بمعني أولئك (للإشارة للجمع البعيد).

EX.: - These are the builders' hard hats.
- Those mountains are very high.

General Exercises on Unit 5



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

	T	F
1. A builder didn't make the walls strong.		
2. A mechanic connected the electricity.		
3. A plumber connected the pipes and faucets.		
4. You can have water to brush your teeth.		

B

	T	F
1. Being a mail carrier is an easy job.		
2. Mail carriers are inside all the day.		
3. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise.		
4. Being outside is great when the weather is good.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

give - clean - walks - keep

A garbage collector is outside all day. He takes away all the garbage, so you can (1)................... your house nice and clean. When it rains, the garbage collector gets wet ! But the garbage collector is happy because he helps to (2)................... the city. He is healthy because he (3) .... every day.



making - tape measure - block - going

When Nancy was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one (1) .... on top of another. When she was older, she started (2) .... things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a (3) .... and a pencil.



electricians - skills - connect - cleaners

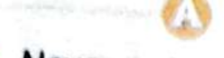
In our community, we can all help each other. Many of people around us have special (1) .... to help us. For example, the builders build the school. The plumbers (2) .... the pipes, so that we have water. The (3) .... connect electricity, so that we can use lights. All the jobs are very important.

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)

A	B
1. The mechanic •	☐ a. takes away all the garbage.
2. A plumber connects •	☐ b. connects the electricity.
3. An electrician •	☐ c. the pipes and faucets.
4. A garbage collector •	☐ d. fixes the cars.
	☐ e. delivers the packages and letters.

(B)





1. Never put anything into a socket,
2. A builder
3. When the bus breaks,
4. The bus drivers

a. connected the pipes and faucets.
b. the bus driver needs the mechanic to fix it.
c. made the walls strong and safe.
d. bring the children to school.
e. only use plugs.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. save – How – electricity - we - can ?

....

2. you – helps – Who – go to – on time – school ?

....

3. light – day – the – in – Use – natural.

....

(B)

1. are – important – All – jobs – the – very.

....

2. mechanics – in the – Those – work – shop – repair.

....

3. your – mail – delivers – A – carrier – letters.

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

Workers in your community

Guiding words :

- bus driver
- get to

....

....

....

....

(B)

How can we save electricity ?

Guiding words :

- turn off
- unplug

....

....

....

....

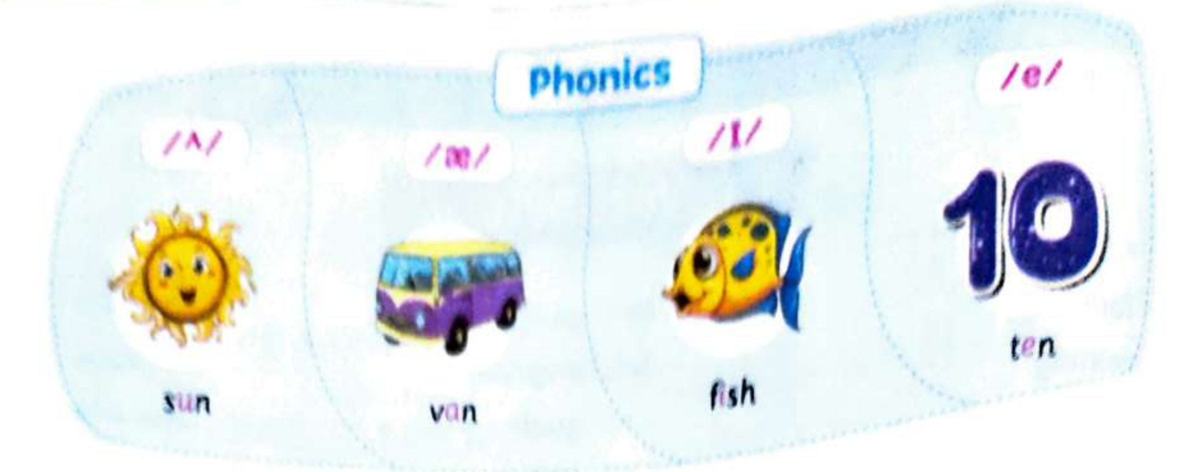
....

Review on Unit 6





energy	طاقة	geologist	عالم جيولوجي
farming	زراعة	engineer	مهندس
mining	تعدين	guide	مرشد سياحي
fishing	صيد سمك	pick	يقطف
wave power	طاقة الأمواج	farmer	فلاح
wind farm	محطة طاقة الرياح	librarian	أمين مكتبة
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	tourism industry	صناعة السياحة
fisherman	صياد سمك	education	التعليم
transportation	وسائل نقل	coal	فحم
metal(s)	معدن - معادن	iron	حديد
copper	نحاس	tractor	جرار
look after	يعتني بـ	factory	مصنع
nets	شبكات	cook	طباخ / طاه
salary	راتب	industries	صناعات
government	حكومة	hotel	فندق
economy	اقتصاد	teach	يدرس - يعلم
sell	يبيع	road	طريق
customer	زبون	decision	قرار
pollution	تلوث	energy source	مصدر الطاقة
cut down	يقطع	wave energy	طاقة الأمواج
oil	زيت / بترول	solar energy	طاقة شمسية
gas	غاز	renewable resources	موارد متجددة
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	non-renewable resources	موارد غير متجددة
fresh	طازج	run out	ينفد (ينتهي)
fish van	شاحنة بيع الأسماك	disappointed	محبط
encourage	يشجع	engine	محرك
litter	قمامة	advice	نصيحة
respect	يحترم - احترام	surprising	مفاجئ - مدهش
best	أفضل	traffic light	إشارة مرور



Language

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative form

Subject + الفعل فى التصريف الثانى + باقى الجملة.

EX.: She looked out of the window.

Negative form

Subject + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل. + باقى الجملة.

EX.: She didn't go to the museum.

2 There was / There wasn't كان يوجد / لا يوجد

للتعبير عن شئ كان موجود / غير موجود فى زمن الماضى.

EX.: There was a beautiful flower.

There was not (wasn't) a mango on the tree.

Notice : There wasn't = There was not

General Exercises on Unit 6



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

	T	F
1. I'm a geologist.		
2. I work in a school library.		
3. I look after all the animals.		
4. I help children find the information they need.		

B

	T	F
1. The hotel pays a salary to the customers.		
2. The workers use their salary to buy food.		
3. Our salary helps our community.		
4. Some of workers' salary goes to the government.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :



metals - ground - study - help

I'm Nahla. I'm a geologist. I (1)................ the ground and the rocks under our feet. I work in the desert. I study what is under the (2)................ . I find special (3)................ and think how we can take the metals out of the ground. I like my job although it isn't easy.

B

think - change - encourage - ask

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to (1) .... quickly. They need to (2) .... their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. They can (3) .... their students' lives.

C

fixed - mechanic - helped – sad

One day, the fisherman's car stopped in front of my house. He was very (1) .... My grandfather was a (2) .... He taught my father all about cars. My father (3) .... the car. The fisherman was happy and thanked my father.

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

A	B
1. Coal and oil are	☐ a. from wind, water and the sun.
2. We can make electricity	☐ b. you need the sea.
3. Wind energy is	☐ c. non-renewable resources.
4. To make wave energy,	☐ d. renewable resources.
	☐ e. a renewable energy resource.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. want – What – you – do – to do ?
2. a lot of – farm – A solar – needs – sunshine.
3. engine – the – We – the sound – heard – of.

(B)

1. work – people – the hotel – many – in – How ?
2. work – industry – the – I – tourism – in.
3. turbines – with – Who – wind – works ?

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

Farming

Guiding words :

- *grow*
- *supermarkets*

Important paragraphs





◉ **Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words on :**

يكتب الطالب موضوعًا إنشائيًا من ثمانية عشر كلمة ويعتبر هذا السؤال من الأسئلة التى تحتاج إلى مزيد من التدريب ولذلك نقدم لك موضوعات إنشائية هامة لكل وحدة كما يمكنك مراجعة موضوعات أخرى بإجابتها النموذجية فى نهاية كتاب الشرح

Unit 1

1 "How can you make flapjacks?"

Melt the butter, sugar and honey in a large pan over low heat. Add oats, salt and stir well. Bake for 20 minutes.

2 "Being healthy"

To be healthy, I drink plenty of water. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. I also play basketball.

Unit 2

3 "Crocodiles and snakes"

Crocodiles and snakes are very dangerous. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This control the number of these small animals.

4 "Steppe eagle"

The steppe eagle is a beautiful bird. It eats other birds and rabbits. The female is bigger than the male.

5 "The horses"

The horses have beautiful eyes. They have strong teeth. They like to eat grass and drink fresh water.

6 "The pelican and the bear"

A bear and a pelican are in the river. They are hungry. They try to catch the big, juicy fish.

7 "Camels"

Camels have large, flat feet. They help us to carry things. We can use their fur to make clothes.



Unit 3

8 "Desert habitat"

There isn't much rain in the desert habitat. Plants that live in the dessert don't need a lot of water. Tamarisk and acacia are in desert habitat.

9 "The life stages of a tomato"

First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in the sunlight after that water it. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

10 "The life stages of a sunflower"

I plant a sunflower. First, I put the seed in soil and water it. Next, the shoot grows above the soil.



11 "My home"

I live in an apartment with my family. There are three rooms in our apartment. My favorite room is the living room.

12 "Your town"

This is my town. My school is next to the hospital. The park where I play with my friends is between the station and the post office.



13 "Workers in our community"

A builder makes the walls strong and safe. An electrician connects the electricity. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage to keep our community clean.

14 "How can we use electricity safely?"

To use electricity safely, never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Don't use a broken wire. Never put anything into a socket.

15 "A job I want to do"

My favorite job is an electrician. It's an important job. I can connect the electrician wires so people can use lights and watch TV.

16 "The mail carrier's job"

There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. They get a lot of exercise. But they wake up very early.

17 "Mechanics"

The mechanics work in the repair shops. They fix the cars and buses. The mechanic job is very important.



18 "Benban Solar Park"

Benban Solar Park is in Aswan. It opened in 2018. It can make 3.8 TWh of electricity per year. It is very big.

19 "Renewable energy resources"

Renewable energy resources are everywhere. We make electricity from wind. A wind farm needs a big space to make electricity.

Part 2

Accumulative Assessments

تقييمات تراكمية



Sample Test 1 on Unit 1



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.		
2. The farmers can't grow rice and tomatoes.		
3. Fishermen catch thousands of cows.		
4. Life is good in Damietta!		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

mixes – gastric juice – teeth – stomach

We put food in our mouth. We chew food with our (1) ....
The food goes down the esophagus. It arrives in the (2) ....
In the stomach, the food mixes with the gastric juice.
The (3) .... changes the food into a simpler form.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Domiati cheese is
2. We need the energy
3. Flapjacks are
4. We raise

B

a. and nutrients in our body.
b. big, square cookies.
c. with our teeth.
d. chickens in Egypt.
e. very famous.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We use our digestive system when we eat. The food goes down to the esophagus. The esophagus goes from the mouth to the stomach. When the food moves from the esophagus to the stomach, the gastric juice digests it. Food moves from the stomach to the small intestine to complete the digestion. The large intestine is around the small intestine. It takes water and salt from the food to the body. It removes waste.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text is about

a. our respiratory system b. our digestive system

c. our nervous system d. our muscular system

2. The esophagus goes from the mouth to the .

a. nose b. blood c. arm d. stomach

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the gastric juice do?

....

4. What does the large intestine do?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. away – from – Stay – smoke.

....

2. lives – Damietta – in – Who – governorate ?

....

3. produce – Egyptian – things – farmers – many.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

i do a lot of sports at school

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

The respiratory system

Guiding words :

- breathe
- goes down

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Sample Test 2 on Units 2 & 3

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Crocodiles are very safe.		
2. Crocodiles and snakes control the number of the small animals.		
3. Snakes eat lizards.		
4. Snakes and crocodiles do a very important job.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

warm – sandals – famous – river

Papyrus is an Egyptian plant. It is a very special plant. It is (1) .... because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made (2) .... and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and (3) .... weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Plants that live in the desert
2. I think the rose is
3. Camels are very noisy
4. The fox's thick fur

B

a. the most beautiful flower.
b. keeps it warm.
c. and they can get angry.
d. don't need a lot of water.
e. need a lot of water.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white, thick coats which protect them from the sun. They have hooves on their feet. These hooves help them walk on the sand. They don't need to drink a lot of water. They can live for about 14 years.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text talks about ....

a. the camels   b. the fennec foxes
c. the horses   d. the rhim gazelles

2. The word .... is the opposite of the word beautiful.

a. fantastic   b. cool   c. ugly   d. ready

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Is the color of rhim Gazelles coats useful for them ? Why ?

....

4. How long do rhim gazelles live ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. roots – under – grow – The – the soil.

....

2. more – is – colorful – The daisy – the rose – than.

....

3. the – steppe – does – Where – live – eagle ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

is a plant cell big or small

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Agricultural habitat

Guiding words :

- farmers
- grow

Sample Test 3 on Units 1, 2 & 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Judy does a lot of sport at school.		
2. Judy walks to her grandma's house on Mondays.		
3. Judy doesn't like fruit.		
4. Judy goes to her grandma's house on foot.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fresh – strong – salt – large

Horses are fast animals. They are 1.4 - 1.8 m tall. They weigh from 380 – 550 kg. They have (1) .... , beautiful eyes. They have (2) .... teeth. They like to eat grass and drink (3) .... water. They live from 25 to 30 years.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. The nose is in
2. My favorite fruits are
3. Wash the scrape
4. Diaphragm is

B

a. bananas and watermelon.
b. with water and soap.
c. the center of the face.
d. a muscle under the lungs.
e. play video games.

Part 2

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My grandparents and I live on the farm. At first, life was very difficult. We worked hard and planted millions of seeds. We used rainwater to water the seeds. We needed about a billion liters of water a year. We grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. We brought animals to the land. We planted trees and flowers. Today, we live on the farm and we have a good life. We used plants to make the land green.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text is about ....
   a. the writer and his friend
   b. the writer and his farm
   c. the writer and his house
   d. the writer and his city
2. At first, life was not ....
   a. busy
   b. free
   c. difficult
   d. easy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How did they make the farm green ?

....

4. Which is better : life in the past or life today ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. waste – intestine – The large – removes.

....

2. the – I – spider – think – is – scarier.

....

3. than – a lotus – A daisy – taller – is – flower.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

drink plenty of water

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

The steppe Eagle

Guiding fact file :

- Where does it live ?
- What does it eat ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Sample Test 4 on Units 4 & 5

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. In hot countries, the houses are built to keep out the heat.		
2. Houses in hot countries have thick walls.		
3. In wet countries, the roof is usually a triangle shape.		
4. Houses around the world look the same.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

walk – learn – place – stores

I love my town. It is small, but it has (1) .... , offices, schools and many other places. It is a good (2) .... to live in. I (3) .... to school every morning. My school is next to the park. I play in that park with my friends.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. This is the socket
2. The mail bag is very heavy.
3. He works on
4. You can go on safaris

B

- [ ] a. It can give some mail carriers a backache.
- [ ] b. in the Sahara Desert.
- [ ] c. the electrician is fixing.
- [ ] d. a tourist boat.
- [ ] e. fell into the river.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello! My name's Karen. I live in Green town. Green town is a nice small town. There are so many things to do there. You can go for a walk in the park. There is a nice park in Bond Street. Opposite the park, there is a post office. There is a hotel next to the post office. The hotel is between the post office and the police station. There is also a playground. The playground is behind the police station. You can buy things at the supermarket. It's **next to** the playground. The toy shop is opposite the supermarket. There is a big car park here.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is mainly about ....
   a. Karen's home b. Karen's school
   c. Karen's park d. Karen's town
2. The underlined word "**next to**" means ....
   a. in front of b. between c. beside d. opposite

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where can you buy things ?
   ....
4. What can you do in Green town ?
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. works – brother – the – at – station – My.
   ....
2. you – helps – Who – at – home ?
   ....
3. second – the – Take – right !
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

excuse me, where's the supermarket

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

A job you want to do

Guiding questions :

- What's your favorite job ?
- What do you do in your job ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 5 on Units 4, 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. I want to be an electrician.		
2. My dream job is to be a mechanic.		
3. When I was a kid, I fixed hard things.		
4. I have my own car now.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

doctor – clean – electricity – plumbers

All the jobs are very important. The builders build the school. The (1) .... connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect (2) .... so that we can use lights. The cleaners keep the school (3) .... A garbage collector takes away all the garbage so you can keep your house clean.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Never touch anything electrical
2. A guide tells the tourists
3. The school is a place
4. Why do you like

B

- [ ] a. where we learn.
- [ ] b. to be a mail carrier ?
- [ ] c. very helpful.
- [ ] d. a lot of interesting stories.
- [ ] e. with wet hands.

Part 2

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A farmer is a person that works on a farm. A farmer grows crops, like vegetables and fruits. A farmer can also get milk from cows. Some farmers raise animals like chickens or cows. A farmer works hard to make sure his crops and animals are growing. A farmer has to work in the heat, cold, snow and rain. Farmers have to plant, water and <u>**harvest**</u> their crops. Harvest means to gather the crops when they are grown. Markets and stores get their fruits and vegetables from farmers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is this text about ?

a. Tourism industry
b. Farming industry
c. Fishing industry
d. Mining industry

2. The underlined word "harvest" means ....

a. raising
b. making
c. feeding
d. cutting

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What animals can farmer raise ?

....

4. Why does a farmer work hard ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the – is – Where – hospital ?

....

2. buys – from – food – The hotel – farmers.

....

3. brings – to – The bus driver – children – school – the.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

what do you do

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Your town

Guiding words :

- post office
- station

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part

3

15 Sample Tests

خمسة عشر اختبار على
المنهج بالكامل



Sample Test 1



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False)

	T	F
1. The fennec fox lives in the forest		
2. The fennec fox has small ears		
3. The fennec fox is smaller than other foxes		
4. The fennec fox can hear insects and small animals		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

summer – down – meet – parents

I live on a boat in the summer. It is very big. My (1) .... work on tourist boats so I go with them. We travel up and (2) .... the Nile. I like the (3) .... very much. I see many interesting places and I meet people from all over the world.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Carbon dioxide is a gas in the air
2. People in the desert
3. We go to the hospital
4. The post office is a place

B

- [ ] a. live in tents
- [ ] b. where we send letters
- [ ] c. when we are sick
- [ ] d. that green plants use to make their food
- [ ] e. that people need to breathe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Renewable energy sources are everywhere. We can make electricity from wind, water, and the sun. We don't need to burn these resources, so there is no pollution.

To make electricity from renewable energy sources, we need new solar farms and wind farms. A solar farm needs a lot of sunshine. A wind farm needs a big space. To make wave energy, you need the sea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Using renewable energy sources can stop ....

   a. electricity b. pollution c. wind d. sea

2. What is the main idea of the text ?

   a. Renewable energy sources

   b. Non-renewable energy sources

   c. Pollution d. Farms

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What are the renewable energy sources ?

   ....

4. Which is cheaper : renewable resources or non-renewable resources ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the apartments – The – in front of - trees – are.

   ....

2. seed - sunflower - soil – in – Plant – the.

   ....

3. favorite – Which – is – room – your ?

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

hurghada's on the Red Sea

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Tourism industry

Guiding words :

- tourists
- hotel

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 2



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

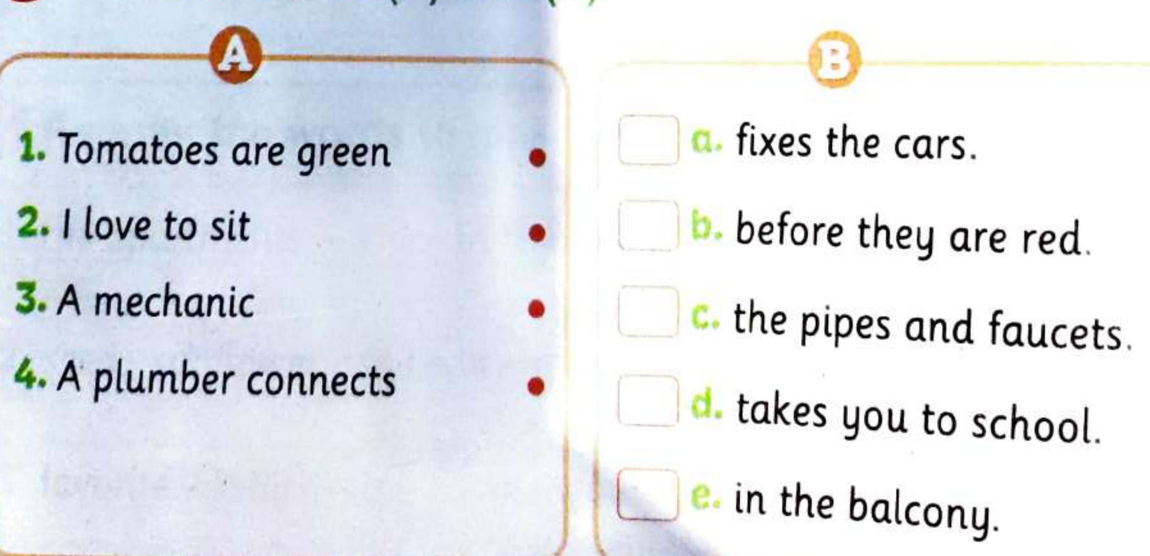
	T	F
1. Marie works at the shopping mall.		
2. Marie checks that the food is fresh.		
3. Marie is unkind.		
4. Marie works near her house.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

desert – rain – rivers – seed

In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat. Plants near the (1) .... and lakes need a lot of water. Plants that live in the (2) .... don't need a lot of water. There is not much (3) .... in the desert, so we can find an acacia plant and tamarisk there.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).



A

1. Tomatoes are green
2. I love to sit
3. A mechanic
4. A plumber connects

B

- a. fixes the cars.
- b. before they are red.
- c. the pipes and faucets.
- d. takes you to school.
- e. in the balcony.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in the world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text is about the .... job.

   a. doctor's b. teacher's
   c. engineer's d. farmer's

2. Teachers need to be very ....

   a. nervous b. patient c. unkind d. ugly

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is the job of a teacher the best ?

   ....

4. Who can change the students' lives ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. touch – anything – Never – with – electrical – wet hands.

   ....

2. carriers – delivering – Mail – letters – are.

   ....

3. work – a hotel – people – in – many – How ?

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

They re dangerous, aren't they

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Your apartment

Guiding questions :

- Where do you live ?
- Which is your favourite room ?

Sample Test 3



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. We should save electricity.		
2. Turn on the light when you leave a room.		
3. Use natural light at night.		
4. Unplug the computer if you use it.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

germination – flowers – tomatoes – roots

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new (1) .... ! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called (2) .... We water the plant every day and the (3) .... grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. This is the socket
2. We take coal, oil and gas
3. Horses like to
4. I take a shower

B

- [ ] a. from the Earth.
- [ ] b. the electrician is fixing.
- [ ] c. taking me to school.
- [ ] d. in the bathroom.
- [ ] e. eat grass.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

When Dalia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Dalia when you want to change something in your house.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dalia always carried a ....

a. doll b. dog c. tape measure d. pen

2. The text talks about ....

a. Dalia's sister b. Dalia c. Mona d. Heba

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Do you think Dalia in the future can work as an electrician or an architect ?

....

4. Why did Dalia use a tape measure ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. it's – the – Look – at – crocodile, – huge!

....

2. on – Who – sea – works – the ?

....

3. her mom – Talia – and – went to – apartment – Suzanne's.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

a plant produces pollen in a flower

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Our community

Guiding words :

- *help*
- *special skills*

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 4



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Zain lives in a city.		
2. His house is the biggest in the village.		
3. He lives with his family.		
4. Zain lives in a village next to the Nile.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

community – weather – salary – hotels

Tourism industry is very important in Egypt. The tourists stay at (1) .... when they arrive in Egypt. The hotels pay a salary to the workers. The workers use their (2) .... to buy food, clothes and for transportation. Some of their salary goes to the government to pay for things. When we work, our salary helps our (3) .... and the whole country.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. A garbage collector
2. A solar farm
3. People need
4. I am a geologist.

B

a. I study the ground.
b. needs a lot of sunshine.
c. oxygen to breathe.
d. carbon dioxide to breathe.
e. takes away all the garbage.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Camels are amazing ! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. They can live without water for a long time. Camels have a special ways to close their nose and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. They have large, flat feet to walk on the sand.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "..................." is the opposite of the word "weak".

   a. useless b. helpful c. hungry d. strong

2. This text is about ....

   a. crocodiles b. bears c. spiders d. camels

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is special about camels ?

   ....

4. How can camels walk on the sand ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. to – animals – They – the – brought – land.

   ....

2. eat – does – What – fox – the – fennec ?

   ....

3. tomatoes – grow – new – do – How – we ?

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

which is your favorite room

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

How can we use electricity safely ?

Guiding words :

- touch
- wet hands

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 5



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. The seed grows roots above the soil.		
2. The seed needs sunlight and water to grow.		
3. The full plants grow leaves and flowers.		
4. We put a seed in the soil.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

city – feel – skills – seeds

In our community, we can all help each other. Many of the people around us have special (1) .... to help us. Together, we help each other and make our (2) .... or village a nicer place to live in. It's the right thing to do and it makes you (3) .... good.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A	B
1. Tomatoes have	a. heat through its ears.
2. The naked mole rat	b. Around 30 - 40 years.
3. The fennec fox loses	c. seeds inside.
4. How long does the steppe eagle live ?	d. lives in eastern Africa.
	e. small mammals and rabbits.

Part 3

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A plant produces pollen in a flower. It uses pollen to make new seeds. The seeds travel away from the plant. The seeds need a new place to grow. Some seeds can move in the wind. These seeds are very light. Some seeds can stick to an animal's fur. The animals move and take the seeds with them. Other seeds can float on water to find a new place to grow. These seeds are usually big and light.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text is about ....

   a. air b. animals c. water d. seeds

2. The light seeds can move in the ....

   a. soil b. water c. wind d. animal's fur

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does a plant produce pollen ?

   ....

4. Why do seeds need a new place ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. thinner – are – Dogs – than – elephants.

   ....

2. do – live – Where – you ?

   ....

3. the – is – The – rock – cave – in.

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

i think crocodiles are scary

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

papyrus

Guiding words :

- special plant
- paper

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 6



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. The plant cells are very, very small.		
2. Chloroplasts make the plant blue.		
3. A plant is made of thousands of cells.		
4. You can see the plant cells with a microscope.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

electricity – books – information – library

I'm Mera. I like books very much. I'm a librarian. I work in a school (1) .... It's my job to look after all the (2) .... I buy lots of new books and I help children find the (3) .... they need. It is an interesting job for me. I like it.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Fishermen	a. a place where I learn.
2. The school is	b. that is paid to people who work.
3. The salary is the money	c. that people need to breathe.
4. There is not much rain	d. in the desert.
	e. catch the fish.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are many beautiful animals live in the desert. Rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They have hooves on their feet. These hooves help them walk on the sand. Rhim gazelles live about 14 years.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

a. beautiful animals   b. the Sahara Desert

c. rhim gazelles   d. plants

2. The word "...................." means to keep them safe.

a. leave   b. protect   c. live   d. look

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How do rhim gazelles walk on the sand in the Sahara Desert ?

....

4. Why are the yellow-white coats helpful to rhim gazelles ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. from – away – smoke – Stay .

....

2. light – natural – in – Use – the day.

....

3. the – clean – The cleaners – school – keep.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

why do plants need sunlight and water

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Pros and cons of mail carrier's job

Guiding words :

- get a lot of exercise
- get a backache

Sample Test 7



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Plants near rivers need a lot of water.	☐	☐
2. There is much rain in the desert habitat.	☐	☐
3. Farmers work in the desert habitat.	☐	☐
4. Farmers grow food for us to eat.	☐	☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

cells – cool – polluted – carbon dioxide

Oxygen is very important for life in Earth. People need oxygen so they can breathe. In big cities, the air is (1) .... because of factories and cars. There is a lot of (2) .... in the air. Plants can help us clean the air. The plant (3) .... need carbon dioxide to make food for the plant.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. The supermarket is a place •
2. Snakes and crocodiles •
3. Flapjacks are •
4. I cook food •

B

☐ a. in the living room.
☐ b. big, square cookies.
☐ c. where we buy food.
☐ d. in the kitchen.
☐ e. are very dangerous.

Part 3

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Mrs Judy is a **cook**. She works in a school kitchen. She cooks lunch for 800 students every week. She makes pies, sandwiches and beefburgers. She cooks meat, fish and vegetables. She washes hundreds of dishes every week! The students like her meals. Today, she is making an apple pie. But she isn't making many!

As today is Saturday, Mrs Judy isn't working, she is at home. She is cooking lunch for two people herself and her son.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "**cook**" is a ....

   a. color   b. place   c. tool   d. job

2. Mrs Judy doesn't work on ....

   a. Sundays   b. Mondays   c. Saturdays   d. Thursdays

B. Answer the following questions.

3. For whom is lunch Mrs Judy cooking ?

   ....

4. What kind of food does Mrs Judy do in the school kitchen ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. good – is – Life – Damietta – in – very !

   ....

2. green – Why – plants – are – always ?

   ....

3. strong – Horses – teeth – have.

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

the seed needs sunlight and water, so it can grow

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Living on a boat

Guiding words :

- travel
- interesting places

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 8



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. I live in Brighton.		
2. There isn't any beaches in Hurghada.		
3. Hurghada is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea.		
4. Hurghada is a big city.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

electrician - plumber - mail carrier - walls

All the jobs are important. There are many workers in our community to help us. A (1) .... delivers your letters and packages. A builder makes the (2) .... strong and safe. An (3) .... connects the electricity, so you can use lights and do your homework on a computer.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A	B
1. Wash the scrape	a. give us oxygen.
2. Plants	b. make electricity.
3. The wind turbines	c. with gastric juice.
4. A crocodile	d. is huge and scary.
	e. with water and soap.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi, I'm Eyad. My grandparents live in a cave. The rooms of their house are in the rock. **Inside**, it's never too hot or too cold. My aunt moved to a new apartment. She's very happy because she has a big balcony. My friend and his family live on a houseboat. It's small, but he loves living on water. I love living in a house because it's big. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "**Inside**" refers to a /an ....
   a. apartment
   b. houseboat
   c. cave
   d. school
2. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. your aunt
   b. your house
   c. different houses
   d. different food

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Eyad's aunt move to ?

   ....

4. Where can we find a place that is not too hot or too cold ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. plants – do – need – Why – and water – sunlight ?

   ....

2. weren't – There – mangoes – the tree – on – any.

   ....

3. walls – makes – strong – A builder – the.

   ....



6 Punctuate the following.

egyptian farmers produce many things

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Different jobs

Guiding words :

- bus driver
- mechanic

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 9



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Snakes and crocodiles aren't dangerous.		
2. Snakes eat insects, birds and lizards.		
3. All animals are important.		
4. Crocodiles do a very important job.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

come - sell - factory - look after

I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. All year, I (1) .... the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the (2) .... to make orange juice. I also (3) .... some of my oranges to the supermarket.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A	B
1. Hurghada is in.	a. in the Sahara Desert.
2. Never touch anything	b. He didn't pass the test.
3. Tourists go on safaris	c. where we learn.
4. The boy is disappointed.	d. the east of Egypt.
	e. electrical with wet hands.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are many jobs we can do. They are all important. They help us to have a better life. A builder makes the walls strong and safe. An electrician connects the electricity, so you can use lights, watch TV, or do your homework on a computer. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets, so you get water to have shower and brush your teeth. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea in the text is about ....
   a. electricity b. jobs c. water d. children
2. A .... helps you keep your home clean.
   a. farmer b. builder
   c. plumber d. garbage collector

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can you use electricity for ?

   ....

4. Who made the place that you live in now ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – plant – Why – a special – papyrus ?

   ....

2. to – used – They – water – the seeds – rainwater.

   ....

3. into – tree – a big – will – It – grow.

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

we chew food with our teeth

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Non-renewable resources

Guiding words :

- run out
- oil

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 10



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. My grandparents live in a houseboat.		
2. The rooms of their house are in the rock.		
3. Inside the cave, it's never too hot or too cold.		
4. My grandmother is 60 years old.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

breathe - pulls - pumps - oxygen

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We need (1) .... in our bodies. We (2) .... in air through our nose. Our diaphragm goes down. It (3) .... air into our lungs.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. "Breathe" is
2. Rhim gazelles live
3. The pelican
4. A mechanic

B

a. in the Sahara Desert.
b. eats small fish.
c. fixes the cars.
d. not much rain.
e. to take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Alex. I live in a city called Brighton. It is in the south of England. It's a small city and about 200,000 people live there. In Brighton, there is a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. Lots of tourists come to my town to go to the beach. We also have Brighton Pier. There are many games and rides for children there. It is a great fun.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the text ?
   a. England b. Brighton c. London d. Egypt
2. The underlined word "**cool**" in the text means ....
   a. bad b. small c. nice d. near

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can you do in Brighton Pier ?
   ....
4. How many people live in Brighton ?
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the – Where – post – is – office ?
   ....
2. you – at – Who – home – helps ?
   ....
3. driver – the – I – bus – respect.
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

stay away from smoke

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Horses

Guiding fact file :

- Where does it live ?
- What does it eat ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 11



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. The garbage collector gets wet when it rains.		
2. The garbage collector helps to clean the city.		
3. The garbage collector is unhealthy.		
4. The garbage collector is unhappy to help people.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stick - sink - wind - float

The seeds need a new place to grow. Some seeds can move in the (1) .... These seeds are very light. Some seeds can (2) .... to an animal's fur. The animals move and take the seeds with them. Other seeds can (3) .... on water to find a new place to grow. These seeds are usually big and light.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. During the day,
2. We chew food with
3. Farmers work in
4. The diaphragm is

B

a. our teeth.
b. an agricultural habitat.
c. a desert habitat.
d. a muscle under the lungs.
e. it's hot in the desert.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The big day is here. It is Ramy's birthday. Ramy jumps out of bed and gets dressed in a hurry. He eats his breakfast and runs out the door for a special morning doing things with his dad.

"Be back in the afternoon." his mother said.

Ramy is very excited. His father has promised to give him a new bike.

When Ramy gets home, all his friends are there to surprise him. As he walks in the door, they all say, "Happy Birthday!" and there is a wonderful new bike.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....
   a. Ramy's birthday b. new bike
   c. school day d. Ramy's book
2. Ramy eats .... and runs out of the door.
   a. dinner b. lunch c. snack d. breakfast

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is Ramy excited ?

....

4. What was the present ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. rainwater – used – They – water – to – the seeds.

....

2. I can – and – relax – do – my homework – quietly.

....

3. most – job – Which – is – interesting – the ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

mariam is british.

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

The naked mole rat

Guiding fact file :

- Where does it live ?
- What does it look like ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 12



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Amir was a teacher who liked helping people.		
2. Amir was always very patient.		
3. Amir always explained things.		
4. Amir was always angry.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

largest – lungs – stomach – milk

Whales are large mammals. They live in the sea. They have lungs. They use (1) .... to breathe. The baby whales born alive and feed on their mothers' (2) .... Some whales eat tiny sea creatures. Others eat large fish. The blue whale is the (3) .... animal in the world.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A	B
1. He cleaned	a. Crocodiles are scary.
2. Which animals are scary ?	b. and noise in the city.
3. There is polluted air	c. his bike again.
4. Chloroplasts	d. make the plant green.
	e. big, square cookies.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Eagles are large birds. They eat small animals such as rats and rabbits. Eagles make their nest in high places such as the tops of trees. Their nests are made of sticks and weeds. Eagles can live in the same nest for many years.

The mother eagle lays one or two eggs each year. When she sits on the eggs, the father eagle brings her food. Baby eagles are called eaglets.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....

a. nests b. foxes c. eagles d. camels

2. Eaglet is a / an .... eagle.

a. adult b. female c. male d. baby

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many eggs can the mother eagle lay each year?

....

4. Can eagles fly high ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. redo – Please, – band - aid – the.

....

2. all – other – can – We – help – each.

....

3. a wind – need – What – farm – does ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

i work in the tourism industry

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Showing respect to others

Guiding words :

- respect
- listen

Sample Test 13



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. I'm a guide.	☐	☐
2. I catch fish.	☐	☐
3. I sell my fish in the market.	☐	☐
4. I wake up very early every day.	☐	☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pollution – burn – electricity – population

We all need electricity in our houses. Now we are using more (1) .... We can make electricity from different energy resources. Non-renewable resources like coal, oil and gas come from the Earth. We cannot make more of them. When we (2) .... non-renewable resources to make electricity ,we also cause (3) ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. The fennec fox loses
2. A wind farm
3. Never put anything into a socket,
4. Spiders

B

☐ a. needs a big space.
☐ b. only use plugs.
☐ c. eat insects.
☐ d. heat from its ear.
☐ e. have seeds inside.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Amira. I'm an electrician. I studied and practiced for three years before I became an electrician. It is not an easy job but I like it. Electricity is very important in our houses. We use electricity to light our houses. Electricity travels faster than 300,000 kilometers/seconds! In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1000 families for a year!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....

   a. houses b. electricity c. light d. storm

2. We use electricity to .... our houses.

   a. light b. paint c. study d. flash

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Is electricity fast or slow ?

   ....

4. What should you do to be an electrician ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the – tools – These – are – plumber's.

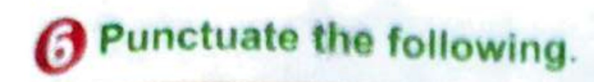
   ....

2. to – do – do – What – you – want ?

   ....

3. very – That – drives – badly – a taxi – driver.

   ....



6 Punctuate the following.

which plant is the tallest

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Hurghada

Guiding fact file :

- Where is it ?
- Interesting places in Hurghada

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 14



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. The naked mole rat lives in eastern America.	☐	☐
2. The naked mole rat has big teeth.	☐	☐
3. The naked mole rat can control its body temperature.	☐	☐
4. The naked mole rats don't get ill.	☐	☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ice – turns – live – pipes

More than half of our body is made up of water. Nothing on Earth can (1) .... without water. It is brought to our home in (2) .... and faucets. We use water for drinking, cooking and washing. When we heat water, it turns to steam. When we freeze it, it turns to (3) ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A	B
1. That's water dripping	☐ a. from the plant.
2. Lots of tourists	☐ b. go on safaris in the desert.
3. I think the rose is	☐ c. our tree to get wood.
4. My father cut down	☐ d. from the faucets.
	☐ e. the most beautiful flower.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are three kinds of animals which are mammals, birds and reptiles. Mammals have fur or hair. Baby mammals drink milk from their mothers' bodies. A whale is a mammal. Mammals don't lay eggs.

Birds are the only animals that have feathers. They lay eggs. They have beaks and wings.

Reptiles have scaly skin. Most reptiles lay eggs on the land. Snakes, crocodiles and lizards are reptiles.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....

   a. food b. drinks c. birds d. animals

2. Snakes are ....

   a. mammals b. birds c. reptiles d. insects

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Do whales lay eggs ?

   ....

4. How many kinds of animals can lay eggs ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. decided – buy – to – They – land – some.

   ....

2. don't get – ill – mole rats – want – The naked.

   ....

3. food – chew – with – We – teeth – our.

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

my mom makes yummy salad

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

A geologist

Guiding words :

- study
- ground

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 15



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. A good teacher is always ready to learn.		
2. Teachers don't teach their students.		
3. Everyone in the class knows different things.		
4. Students teach their teachers.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

books – stories – history – tourism

I'm Kareem. I live in Egypt. I am Egyptian. I'm a guide. I work in the (1) .... industry. Many people come to my country, Egypt every year. There are many interesting places to visit in Egypt. It's my job to explain the (2) .... and tell the tourists lots of interesting (3) ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A	B
1. Stay away	a. delivers the packages.
2. A mail carrier	b. in an apartment.
3. I love living	c. from smoke.
4. Farmers grow	d. food for us to eat.
	e. a salary to the students.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hany **woke up** on Saturday morning. He was excited and ready to play football in the garden. Then he looked out of the window. He became sad. It was raining. There were dark clouds in the sky. The street was wet and black. It was not a good day for playing football. Hany looked out into the street. He saw his friend Peter wearing his raincoat and playing in a big puddle. Hany liked the idea!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....
   a. a rainy day b. a sunny day
   c. swimming d. Peter
2. The underlined phrase "**woke up**" means ....
   a. got up b. made up c. went up d. gave up

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Was Hany happy ? Why ?
   ....
4. What happened on Saturday morning ?
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. village – in – there – Is – a station – your ?
   ....
2. yesterday – homework – She – her – redid.
   ....
3. mail – the – bicycle – That – carrier's – is.
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

the bear lifts its paw

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding words.

Crocodiles and snakes

Guiding words :

- dangerous
- eat

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع



1. Listening texts of units

١- نصوص استماع الوحدات

General Exercises on Unit 1

A. My mom made special food for us. It looks delicious. Egyptian farmers produce many kinds of fruits and vegetables that we eat. My mom says we also grow rice in Egypt.

B. We need oxygen in our bodies. In the lungs, the oxygen from the air goes into our blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body. The diaphragm goes up. It pushes air with carbon dioxide out of our lungs. We breathe out.

General Exercises on Unit 2

A. Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats. They have hooves on their feet to help them walk on the sand.

B. A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

General Exercises on Unit 3

A. Green plants take carbon dioxide from the air. The plant cells need carbon dioxide to make food for the plant. The plants also produce oxygen. Plants in our houses and parks give us oxygen to breathe.

B. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes ! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil.

General Exercises on Unit 4

A. I live in an apartment. There are three rooms. My favorite room is the living room with the balcony where I can see the whole street. I love to sit in the balcony. My mother doesn't love the balcony.

B. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

General Exercises on Unit 5

A. A builder made the walls strong and safe. An electrician connected the electricity so you can use lights, watch TV, or do your homework on a computer. A plumber connected the pipes and faucets, so you can get water to have a shower and brush your teeth.

B. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mail carriers are outside all the day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or wet and cold. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise.

General Exercises on Unit 6

A. I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

B. The hotel pays a salary to the workers. The workers use their salary to buy food, clothes and for transportation. Some of their salary goes to the government to pay for things like roads and schools. When we work, our salary helps our community and the whole country.

2. Listening texts of Accumulative assessments

٢- نصوص استماع التقييمات التراكمية

Sample Test (1) on Unit 1

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow potatoes, lemons, rice, tomatoes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta!

Sample Test (2) on Units 2 & 3

We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important. Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

Sample Test (3) on Units 1 , 2 & 3

Judy does a lot of sport at school. On the weekend, Judy walks to her grandma's house with her family. She likes walking because she can talk to her mom and dad. She doesn't eat candy, but she likes fruit.

Sample Test (4) on Units 4 & 5

Houses around the world look different. In hot countries, the houses are built to keep out the heat. They usually have thick walls and small windows. In wet countries, the roof is built for lots of rain. The roof is usually a triangle shape.

Sample Test (5) on Units 4 , 5 & 6

My dream job is to be a mechanic. Since I was a kid, I always tried to fix things. My parents gave me easy things to fix. At the age of 15, my dad had an old car and I was excited to fix some parts of the car. But now I have my own car and every Saturday on the morning I check if the engine has a problem in it. I hope in few years, I could have a mechanic career for the rest of my life.

3. Listening Texts of Sample Tests

٣- نصوص استماع الاختبارات

Sample Test 1

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals.

Sample Test 2

Marie works at the supermarket near her house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. She checks that the food is fresh. She helps me when I can't find something. She is very kind and helpful.

Sample Test 3

We shouldn't waste a lot of electricity and we should save it. When you leave a room, turn off the lights. If you're not using your computer or television, unplug it. Use natural light in the day.

Sample Test 4

My name is Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house isn't the biggest in the village. There are tall trees behind my house.

Sample Test 5

We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

Sample Test 6

A plant is made of millions of cells. The plant cells are very, very small. Chloroplasts make the plant green. You can only see them with a microscope. The green plant cells make food for the plant. They use sunlight, carbon dioxide and water.

Sample Test 7

Farmers work in agricultural habitat. They grow food for us to eat. Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert habitat. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

Sample Test 8

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the

Red Sea. There's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do in it. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here.

Sample Test 9

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

Sample Test 10

My grandfather is called Hatem. He is 60 years old. He lives with my grandmother. My grandparents live in a cave. The rooms of their house are in the rock. Inside, it's never too hot or too cold.

Sample Test 11

A garbage collector is outside all day. When it rains, the garbage collector gets wet ! But the garbage collector is happy because he helps to clean the city. He is healthy because he walks every day.

Sample Test 12

Amir was a teacher. He was always very patient and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, helped, and explained things all the time.

Sample Test 13

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market.

Sample Test 14

The naked mole rat lives in eastern Africa. It has big teeth and no hair. It can't control its body temperature because it has no hair. The naked mole rats are special because they don't get ill and live for a long time.

Sample Test 15

To be a teacher you should be patient and clever. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.